

HAMPSHIRE



FIELD CLUB

MONOGRAPH 10

**BASING HOUSE
HAMPSHIRE
EXCAVATIONS
1978 -1991**



by David Allen & Sue Anderson

Hampshire Field Club & Archaeological Society: Monograph 10

Basing House
Hampshire: Excavations 1978 -1991

By David Allen & Sue Anderson

with contributions by

Adrienne Powell, Peter Makey and Alan Turton

illustrations by

Sue Anderson and Sarah Orr

Published by the Hampshire Field Club & Archaeological Society
in co-operation with Hampshire County Council

HAMPSHIRE FIELD CLUB MONOGRAPH 10
Published by the Hampshire Field Club & Archaeological Society

This monograph is published with the aid of a grant from Hampshire County Council, to whom the authors and publishers extend their grateful thanks.

Publication by the Hampshire Field Club does not imply that this body endorses the views expressed; the factual content and the opinions expressed herein remain the responsibility of the authors.

© Hampshire Field Club & Archaeological Society 1999

ISBN 0-907473-11-9

Edited by David Allen

Produced for the Society by Wyvern 21 Ltd, Bristol

CONTENTS

LIST OF FIGURES	v
PREFACE	viii
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	ix
ABSTRACT	xi
Chapter 1 INTRODUCTION	
Geography	1
Early history	1
Documentary evidence: pre-Domesday	3
Medieval monuments	4
Documentary evidence: post-Domesday	4
The English Civil War and the siege of Basing House	5
Aftermath	7
Restoration to present day	8
Chapter 2 THE SITE TODAY	
Old Basing	14
The Grange	15
Garrison Gate and remains of walls	17
Bailey	19
Old House or Citadel	20
New House	21
Walled Garden	21
Bothy and modern Basing House	22
Orchard	23
Civil War earthworks	23
Basingstoke Canal	23
Basingstoke Common	24
Chapter 3 EARLY EXCAVATIONS	
Canal building and early archaeological discoveries	25
Excavations by Lord Bolton	25
Excavations in the 1960s	27
Post-excavation work by Moorhouse	30
Chapter 4 THE CITADEL GATEHOUSE (INCLUDING BOTH RINGWORK TERMINALS AND THE DITCH)	
The Excavations	31
Gatehouse - structural evidence by phase	35
Ringwork Terminals - structural evidence by phase	48
The Ditch - east and west of the bridge	52
Gatehouse - Interpretation	54
Ringwork Terminals - Interpretation	59
The Ditch - Interpretation	60

Chapter 5	THE CITADEL GATEHOUSE (INCLUDING BOTH RINGWORK TERMINALS AND THE DITCH)	
	The Finds	61
	The Pottery	61
	Ceramic building material	71
	Stone building material	74
	Glass	76
	Clay pipes	78
	Metalwork	81
	Coins & tokens	85
	Miscellaneous small finds	85
	Flint	86
	Shell	87
	Animal bone	87
Chapter 6	THE CITADEL KITCHEN AREA	
	The Excavations and Finds	89
Chapter 7	THE CITADEL BANK	
	The Excavations and Finds	93
Chapter 8	THE CITADEL POSTERN GATE	
	The Excavations and Finds	97
Chapter 9	THE WALLED GARDEN	
	The Excavations and Finds	103
Chapter 10	THE NEW HOUSE	
	The Excavations and Finds	109
Chapter 11	CONCLUSIONS	113
	BIBLIOGRAPHY and REFERENCES	115
	INDEX	119

LIST OF FIGURES

61 61 71 74 76 78 81 85 85 86 87 87	Fig a	Excavations 1902; Lord Bolton's workers in the Citadel interior near the cellar of the Great Hall.	ix
89	Fig b	Excavations 1983; Ken Barton's volunteers at the Citadel Gatehouse.	x
93	Fig c	Excavations 1987; volunteers in the Walled Garden.	x
97	Fig d	Excavations 1991; volunteers at the Postern Gate.	x
103	Fig 1	Location of Basing House, Hampshire.	2
109	Fig 2	Portrait of William Paulet, the first Marquess of Winchester (died 1572).	5
113	Fig 3	Portrait of John Paulet the fifth Marquess of Winchester (died 1674).	5
115	Fig 4	The engraving attributed to Wenceslaus Hollar, which depicts the siege from the south (c1644).	7
119	Fig 5	The ruins of Basing House viewed from the north-east; the engraving by John Dunstall, published by Peter Stent in 1653, from the Sutherland Collection.	8
	Fig 6	The ruined Basing House viewed from the south-west.	9
	Fig 7	1798 map of the Basing Estate by William Brown (HRO 11M49 E/B1/22). 'A Plan and Survey of a Plot of Land lying near Basing in Hampshire, The Property of the Hon. Lord Bolton, Survey'd January 1st 1798 by William Brown.'	10
	Fig 8	Aerial photograph taken in 1949. The site of Basing House is unkempt, in contrast with the Walled Garden which is in its vegetable garden phase. Grange Farm and the Great Barn occupy the lower right hand corner. © British Crown Copyright/MoD. Reproduced with the permission of the controller of Her Britannic Majesty's Stationery Office.	13
	Fig 9	The Site Today - Map showing the component parts of the Basing landscape as described in the text. Listed buildings are outlined. Based upon Ordnance Survey material with the permission of the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office, © Crown Copyright License No MC88308M0001.	14
	Fig 10	17th century house on the corner of The Street and Crown Lane, built from material taken from Basing House ruins.	15
	Fig 11	Basing Grange - The Great Barn, exterior.	16
	Fig 12	Basing Grange - The Great Barn, interior.	16
	Fig 13	View from the south of one of the two blocked gateways which originally led to the late 17th century mansion.	17
	Fig 14	19th century print of the Garrison Gate, Basing, etched by E J Roberts and published by Virtue & Co, London. Visible through the gateway is a fisherman leaning over the canal bridge.	18
	Fig 15	1920s postcard of the Garrison Gate.	19
	Fig 16	'The Turret', once part of the curtain wall, now isolated on the north bank of the dry canal.	19
	Fig 17	19th century print with the canal in the foreground showing the breach in the curtain wall. In the distance is the tower at Turret Cottage, and on the right the thatched dovecote.	22
	Fig 18	View, presumably late Victorian, showing the canal bridge from the west with Park Hill cottages in the background.	24
	Fig 19	Lord Bolton's excavations at Basing House c1902. View showing the inner end of the main gate passage and an unexcavated deposit of what appears to be garden soil, chalk and rubble at the centre of the Citadel.	26
	Fig 20	Plan of Basing House Excavations 1875-1969 - Based upon Moorhouse 1970, Fig 9.	28
	Fig 21	Basing House. Location of the recent excavations: 1 Citadel Gatehouse (1978-83) 2 Citadel Kitchen Area (1980) 3 South Bank (1988) 4 Postern Gate (1991) 5 Walled Garden (1982 and 1987-8) 6 The New House North-west range (1990). Based upon Ordnance Survey material with the permission of the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office, © Crown Copyright License No MC88308M0001.	32
	Fig 22	Citadel Gatehouse - Limits of Excavations 1978-83.	33
	Fig 23	Citadel Gatehouse - All Features.	34
	Fig 24	Citadel Gatehouse Phase I.	36

LIST OF FIGURES

vi

Fig 25	Citadel Gatehouse east viewed from above, showing the Phase Ia gatetower postholes 361 and 364 during excavation. Scale 1m.	37
Fig 26	Citadel Gatehouse centre viewed from the north-west, showing the Phase Ia gatetower postholes 730 and 731 at a late stage in excavation. Scale 2m.	37
Fig 27	The Phase Ib flint-lined pit viewed from the north. Scale 2m.	38
Fig 28	Citadel Gatehouse Phase II.	39
Fig 29	The Phase II chalk building viewed from the south after removal of the floor.	40
Fig 30	Citadel Gatehouse Phase III.	41
Fig 31	The north end of the east gatehouse viewed from the passageway, showing the Phase IIIa flint and chalk mortared wall footings 144 and 147. The Phase IIIb brick drain 180 is the dark strip running parallel to wall 144.	42
Fig 32	Citadel Gatehouse Phase IV.	43
Fig 33	The Phase IV west gatehouse viewed from the south.	44
Fig 34	Citadel Gatehouse Phases V-VI.	46
Fig 35	View from the north of the H-shaped feature 547 which cuts the rutted chalk surface 504 of Phase IV.	47
Fig 36	The flint cobbled apron 114 on the east side of the gate passage, viewed from the north.	47
Fig 37	Ringwork Terminal West.	48
Fig 38	Ringwork Terminal East - Partially reconstructed section and plan.	49
Fig 39	View of the west rampart room, at an early stage of excavation.	50
Fig 40	View of the Ringwork Terminal East showing the tips of subsoil 955 (the 0.7m deposits below the ranging pole) which may represent Civil War period strengthening.	51
Fig 41	Basing House Citadel - Plan of East Ditch Excavation showing tip lines and relationship to Gatehouse.	52
Fig 42	East Ditch (1981-83)	53
Fig 43	Citadel Gatehouse Interpretative Sequence.	55
Fig 44	Citadel Gatehouse north end - Features of Phase Ib and VI including the flint-lined pit and brick steps.	58
Table 1	Basing House Citadel Gatehouse. Pottery Groups by Phase (Weight in grams).	63
Fig 45	Basing House Citadel. Pottery. Nos 1-39 from the Gatehouse, Phase 1- Late & Unphased, Scale 1:4.	65
Table 2	Basing House Citadel Ditch. Pottery Group Totals (Weight in grams).	66
Fig 46	Basing House Citadel. Pottery. Nos 40-51 from the Ditch (West); Nos 52-79 Pottery from the Ditch (East), Coarse Medieval and Surrey White Wares, Scale 1:4.	67
Fig 47	Basing House Citadel. Pottery. Nos 80-104 from the Ditch (East), Red Wares and Slip Wares, Scale 1:4.	69
Fig 48	Basing House Citadel. Pottery. Nos 105-129 from the Ditch (East), Stonewares, Bellarmines, Tin Glazed Earthenwares and Porcelain, Scale 1:4.	70
Fig 49	Basing House Citadel. Ceramic Building Material. Nos 1-9 from the Gatehouse, Phase 4 - Late, Scale 1:4.	71
Fig 50	Basing House Citadel. Ceramic Building Material. Nos 10-13 from the Ditch (West); Nos 14-27 from the Ditch (East), Scale 1:4.	73
Fig 51	Basing House Citadel. Stone Building Material. Nos 1-4 from the Gatehouse; Nos 5-8 from the Ditch (West), Scale 1:4.	74
Fig 52	Basing House Citadel. Stone Building Material. Nos 9-15 from the Ditch (East), Scale 1:4.	75
Fig 53	Basing House Citadel. Glass. Nos 1-2 Vessel glass, Scale 1:2; Nos 3-6 Bottle glass, Scale 1:4; Nos 7-10 Window glass, Scale 1:2. All from the Gatehouse.	76
Fig 54	Basing House Citadel. Glass. Nos 11-18 Vessel glass from the Ditch, Scale 1:2.	77
Fig 55	Basing House Citadel. Glass. Nos 19-39 Bottle glass, Scale 1:4; Nos 40-43 Window glass, Scale 1:2. All from the Ditch.	77
Fig 56	Basing House Citadel. Clay pipes. Nos 1-8 from the Gatehouse, Scale 1:2.	78
Fig 57	Basing House Citadel. Clay pipes. Nos 9-49 from the Ditch, plain bowls with no maker's marks, c1580-1760, Scale 1:2.	79
Fig 58	Basing House Citadel. Clay pipes. Nos 50-68 from the Ditch, maker's marks and decorated pipes, 17th-19th centuries, Scale 1:2.	80
Fig 59	Basing House Citadel. Metalwork. Nos 1-21 Iron from the Gatehouse, Scale 1:4.	82
Fig 60	Basing House Citadel. Metalwork. Nos 22-36 Copper Alloy, Nos 37-39 Lead, from the Gatehouse, Scale 1:2.	83
Fig 61	Basing House Citadel. Metalwork. Nos 40-63 Iron from the Ditch, Scale 1:4.	84
Fig 62	Basing House Citadel. Metalwork. Nos 64-65 Copper Alloy, Nos 66-67 Lead, from the Ditch, Scale 1:2.	85

37	Fig 63	Basing House Citadel. Miscellaneous Small Finds.. Nos 1-3 Stone, Scale 1:4; Nos 4-5 Jet and Antler, from the Gatehouse and Ditch, Scale 1:2.	86
37	Fig 64	The Citadel Kitchen Area viewed from the north-east. A 3m length of boundary wall has been removed, but the Tudor drain remains in situ. The angled layers of the ringwork bank can be seen in the cross-section.	89
38			
39	Fig 65	Basing House Citadel Kitchen Area 1980. Diagrammatic section showing the relationship of the medieval ringwork bank (325, 327) to the underlying brown clay (330) and the later features.	90
40			
41	Fig 66	Basing House Citadel. Pottery. Nos 1-2 from the Kitchen area, Scale 1:4.	90
	Fig 67	Citadel Bank Excavation 1988 - General Plan.	93
42	Fig 68	Citadel Bank Excavation 1988 - West facing section.	94
43	Fig 69	Citadel Bank Excavation 1988 - East facing section.	94
44	Fig 70	View of the Citadel Bank section from the east. The old ground surface is visible just below the midpoint of the ranging pole; the adjacent voids are rabbit burrows.	95
46			
47	Fig 71	Citadel Postern Gate Excavation 1991 - Plan.	98
47	Fig 72	Citadel Postern Gate Excavation 1991 - North section.	99
48	Fig 73	Citadel Postern Gate Excavation 1991 - East section.	100
49	Fig 74	Postern Gate Excavations viewed from the west showing the human skull as found in the shallow gully next to the brick-built drain.	101
50	Fig 75	View from the interior showing the successive narrowing of the west end of the Postern Gate passage.	101
51	Fig 76	Skull from the Citadel Postern Gate. The sword wound is clearly visible.	101
	Fig 77	Carved stone head from the Citadel Postern Gate; probably the emperor Marcus Aurelius	102
52	Fig 78	Carved stone head from the Citadel Postern Gate; possibly the Carthaginian general Hannibal.	102
53			
55	Fig 79	Walled Garden Excavations 1982 & 1987-88 showing the approximate position of trenches, areas excavated and the location of the walls.	103
58	Fig 80	Walled Garden View of the 1988 excavation of the wall foundations. The corner dovecote is in the background.	104
63	Table 3	Basing House Walled Garden - Possible sequence and dating of activities.	105
65	Table 4	Basing House Walled Garden - Pottery Group Totals (Weights in grams).	105
66	Fig 81	Basing House Walled Garden. Pottery, Ceramic Building Material, Stone, Glass and Clay pipes. Nos 1-6 and 9-14, Scale 1:4; Nos 7-8 and 15-22, Scale 1:2.	106
67	Fig 82	New House Excavations 1990; plan of the north-west range.	110
69	Fig 83	General view of the New House excavations from the north-east, showing how the stable block was terraced into the slope.	110

70

71

73

74

75

76

77

77

78

79

80

82

83

84

85

Preface

By F A J Emery-Wallis, DL

Basing House was the scene of one of the most stirring acts of defiance that the county of Hampshire has ever known. But the threat did not come, as has so often been the case, from an external force. It was a result of the political dissatisfaction and religious dissension that tore the country apart during the English Civil War.

For three summers the Royalist garrison at Basing held-out against numerous attacks and assaults. It was not until 'Ironsides' himself, Oliver Cromwell, and his New Model Army turned their attention to the site that the fate of Basing was decided. On the morning of October 14th, 1645, the Parliamentary forces swarmed over the defences and within a matter of hours the house was ablaze.

This act of war effectively brought an end to five hundred years of history and tradition. Basing, initially the seat of the de Port family who had arrived with William the Conqueror, passed to the St Johns, the de Poynings, and thence to the Paulets. Sir William Paulet, the First Marquess of Winchester, took the ailing castle and turned it into a private mansion which rivalled royal palaces in its grandeur.

Although the land was returned to the Paulets at the Restoration, and remained with their descendants until the County Council acquired the site in 1972, Basing House as such, was never reoccupied. It was the family, however, who began the archaeological investigations, in the late 19th century. Since then

there have been a number of projects and publications relating to Basing, but the site still conveys the impression that it has a marvellous story waiting to be told.

This volume describes the archaeological work that the County Museums Service carried out on behalf of the County Council between 1978 and 1991. It centres on the investigation of the Citadel gate, which began life as a medieval defence work, ended it as the approach to an 18th century romantic ruin, and along the way played its part in the Civil War siege. More telling evidence for the Civil War comes from the Postern Gate, where the skull of one of the defenders was found upside down in a ditch! Less dramatic was the work in the area of the Walled Garden, but this paved the way for a splendid period garden, created by the Hampshire Gardens Trust. This was officially opened by the Duke of Kent in 1991.

Today the County Council looks after not only Basing House ruins, with Civil War earthworks that are the best-preserved in the country, but also the Great Barn and Grange Farm, which reflect the working life of this once great agricultural estate. The potential, in terms of educational activity and leisure time enjoyment is enormous. It is my hope that the appearance of this volume represents the beginning of a new era for Basing House, and one in which the true spirit of the place can be appreciated by the people of Hampshire, and visitors from near and far.

Acknowledgements

A large number of individuals have contributed to the archaeology of Basing House over the past twenty years. The main episodes of excavation were supervised by Tim Schadla-Hall, Ken Barton and David Allen, with assistant supervision and recording in the hands of Robina Silk, Rob Adams, Geoffrey H Cole and Graham Huxley. Valuable contributions came from members of the Farnham, North East Hants and Basingstoke Archaeological and Historical Societies, and the Friends of Basing House. The bulk of the seasonal spade work was achieved by voluntary workers (over 300 individuals in total) from all walks of life and all corners of the world.

The early seasons of work were sponsored by Hampshire County Council's erstwhile Recreation Department, and thanks go to all the staff involved for their considerable assistance. The late Dennis Jackson, warden at Basing House until 1987, and Alan Turton his successor, did their utmost to ensure that camping at Basing was an enjoyable experience,

as well as contributing greatly to the smooth running of the project. Further County Council assistance was provided by Gordon Pearson (Architects Department) and Bruce Howard (Archaeology and Planning).

Thanks go to the Ministry of Defence for permission to use the aerial photograph in Fig 8, to the Ordnance Survey for permission to copy their maps of Basing in Figs 9 and 21 and to the Society of Post-Medieval Archaeology for use of the plan which forms the basis of Fig 20.

The post-excavation work has been a protracted process, and the authors would like to thank the specialists for their contributions and patience. Alan Turton provided most of the information about Basing House today, and innumerable helpful comments on the accuracy of the historical accounts. Tony Cross examined a number of the stone finds, Adrienne Powell the animal bone, Peter Makey the worked flint. Duncan Brown made comment on the medieval pottery and John Kenyon provided some



Fig a Excavations 1902; Lord Bolton's workers in the Citadel interior near the cellar of the Great Hall.

useful parallels for the medieval fortifications. Our thanks go also to Stephen Moorhouse, who was able to offer a number of useful suggestions arising from his earlier work at Basing. Finally, a particular word

of appreciation is extended to Sarah Orr, who helped coax an unwieldy manuscript into the home straight and across the finishing line.



Fig b Excavations 1983; Ken Barton's volunteers at the Citadel Gatehouse.



Fig c Excavations 1987; volunteers in the Walled Garden.



Fig d Excavations 1991; volunteers at the Postern Gate.

Abstract

The fate of Basing House in October 1645, during the English Civil War, is well known. What was once the 'greatest of any subjects house in England, yea larger than of the Kings Palaces' was sacked and looted by Oliver Cromwell, at the end of an intermittent three-year siege. It was thoroughly demolished soon afterwards. Today the area of the house, a grassy ruin extending to some 18 acres (7.3 ha), is looked after by Hampshire County Council as one of its heritage sites, together with other features of the estate such as the Great Barn

Archaeological excavation has taken place at Basing

House since the late 19th century, and much of this work has been published in outline form. The areas investigated have in the main been back-filled. This report describes the more recent work by Hampshire County Council Museums Service, between 1978 and 1991. Six areas were examined (see below). These investigations are described in detail, together with brief summaries of the previous work, and of the surviving elements of this once substantial estate.

The archive is housed at Basing House, and with the Hampshire County Council Museums Service.

Excavations since 1978

Since 1978, six areas of Basing House have seen significant excavation. The locations are shown on Fig 21, and the various campaigns can be summarised as follows:

The Old House or Citadel

- 1 Gatehouse – excavated in six summer seasons of one month's duration, 1978–83, including both ringwork terminals and ditch. Supervision by Schadla-Hall 1978–81, Barton 1982, 1983, and Wiggins (YTS Project).
- 2 Kitchen Area – excavated in 1980 (Schadla-Hall).
- 3 South Bank – section cut in 1988 (Allen).
- 4 Postern Gate – cleared in the 1960s, excavated 1991 (Allen).

5 Walled Garden

- Northern half – watching brief 1982 (YTS Project).
- Southern area – excavated in 1987–8 (Allen).

6 The New House

- North-west range, excavated in 1990 (Allen).

Abstract

The abstract section contains a large, faint rectangular area, likely representing a figure or a large block of text that is illegible due to fading. The text within this area is too light to be transcribed accurately.

EXCERPTS

The excerpts section contains several paragraphs of text, which are also very faint and difficult to read. The text appears to be organized into distinct blocks, possibly representing different parts of a larger document or study. The content is illegible due to the low contrast of the scan.

Chapter 1

Introduction

Geography

Old Basing lies approximately 3km to the east of Basingstoke. The settlement is a fine example of a linear village and its original extent can be seen to run from the earthworks known as Oliver's Battery in the north, to the site of Basing House in the south-west, a distance of just over 1km, with the church of St Mary at the centre. By the 1790s the village was skirted by the now mostly in-filled Basingstoke Canal, and since 1849 it has been divided in two by the more strident course of the mainline railway. In recent years there has been housing development to the south-east, and to the west, between the village and ever-expanding Basingstoke at Cowdery's Down and Lychpit, an area now called Little Basing. The location plan (Fig 1) is based on Ordnance Survey maps of 1947 (A) and 1962 (B).

The area is drained by the River Loddon, which flows north through the peat moor to the west of Basing House, on a line almost parallel with the main street of the village. It passes beneath the railway viaduct and around Old Basing Mill, now known as Bartons Mill, before reaching Lower Mill further to the north. At the time of Domesday there were three mills listed for Basing belonging to Hugh de Port, and one attached to the church (Munby 1982).

The marshy areas surrounding the river, watered by many small streams, were the site of a number of medieval fishponds, and more recently of watercress beds. Part of this area is named 'Slaughter Close', and this name is traditionally attributed to the Civil War siege and fighting which took place in the summer of 1644. The derivation of the name may be of a much less morbid and martial nature, however, and relate to the Old English *slohtre*, 'slough, or muddy place' (Ekwall 1960) which would be quite appropriate here, or even *slah, treow*, 'land on which a sloe tree grew' (Field 1989).

The underlying geology is predominantly chalk with a clay subsoil. Chalk pits are found all around the village, including some, such as Oliver's Dell on Cowdery's Down (now filled in), which were used as the site of batteries during the siege. The northern half of the village is built on the Reading Beds which consist of mottled clay, whereas the southern half is on upper chalk (soft white chalk with many flint nodules) with occasional patches of Red Clay with flints.

The valley of the Loddon is alluvium, with patches of valley gravel and sand (OS Geological Sheet 284).

Today the site of Basing House (SU 663526) is bordered to the west and north by the course of the Basingstoke Canal. To the south and east is Basingstoke Common, some of which was originally part of the park belonging to the House. Although the site is not particularly elevated, it is located on a slight spur overlooking the river valley. The land to the south is higher, but the slope is shallow and it would be difficult to command the House from this position. It is not easy to fully appreciate the strategic value of the site before it was fortified, due to the large number of trees in the locality today, but in winter it is still possible to see Basingstoke with ease. As the site of a fortified medieval manor, with defensive ramparts and substantial buildings, it must have been both impressive and effective.

Early History

Our knowledge of the early prehistory of the area is largely based on chance finds. A number of worked flints of Palaeolithic to Neolithic date have been found to the south-west of Basing around Upper Mill Farm (in an area referred to as Wellocks Hill by the local historian George Willis), and there seems to have been activity around the site of Basing House in the Mesolithic/Early Neolithic period, to judge from flints found to the east (Wymer 1977) and at the site itself (see p86).

Bronze Age barrows are located on the higher ground to the south and east of Basing, at Home Farm in Hackwood Park and near Huish Farm (Grinsell 1940). To the north-west, a Middle Bronze Age cremation cemetery has been excavated at Daneshill (Millett & Schadla-Hall 1991) and a copper bun ingot found by metal detecting (*ibid*, 94). A ring-ditch and burial with associated finds were excavated on Cowdery's Down, as well as pits containing Late Bronze Age/Early Iron Age pottery (Millett 1983). A fourth find spot close by produced similar sherds in a small pit (Millett & Schadla-Hall *op cit*, 93).

Iron Age occupation is also attested at Cowdery's Down in the form of an enclosure ditch, field boundary ditch and pit complex with late Iron Age pottery (Millett 1983). Stray finds of pottery have been

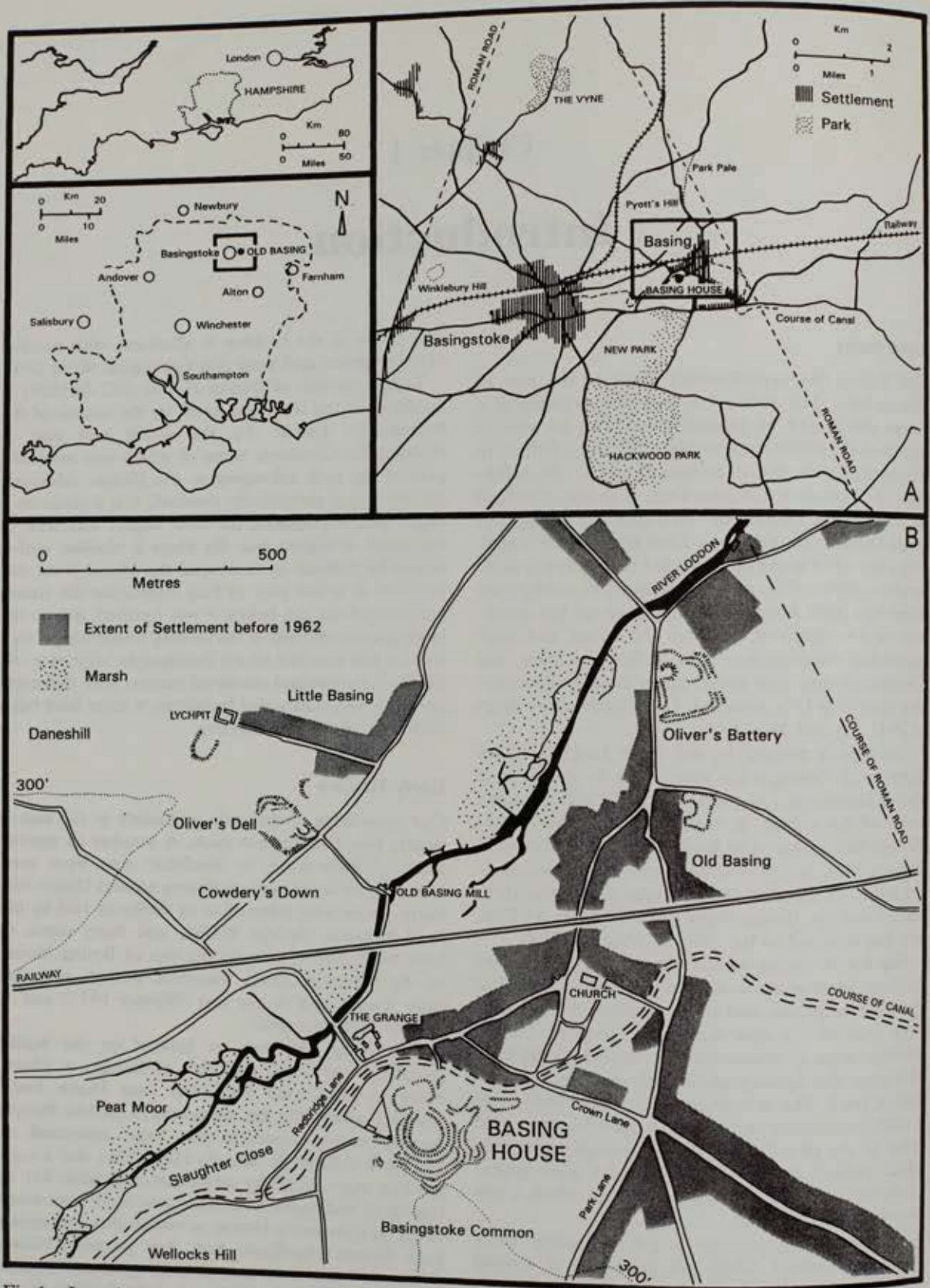


Fig 1 Location of Basing House, Hampshire.

recovered at Upper Mill Farm, Huish Farm, and Chineham brickworks, in all cases associated with Roman pottery (Winbolt & Winbolt 1941-3). At Basing House itself, excavations immediately south of the outer bank and ditch in the 1960s revealed traces of 'Belgic' hut circles and pottery (Combley *et al* 1968 - see Chapter 3 p29). Aerial photography has revealed extensive cropmarks on the chalkland south of Basing House, including enclosures, linear features, and trackways, most of which have not been dated. Two nearby Iron Age/Romano-British settlements were excavated prior to development and motorway construction (Ructstalls Hill, Oliver and Applin 1979; and Common Plantation).

The large amount of Roman ceramic building material from Combley *et al*'s excavations (*op cit*) led them to infer that a building of the period existed at Basing House. It seems very probable that this was a villa, as combed flue tile and samian ware were among the finds, along with coins, nails, pottery and animal bone. Structural features were few in the relatively confined excavation, but a rubbish pit containing pottery, tile and ox bones was revealed by the construction of an anti-tank trench within Basing Park during World War II, and Peers noted the discovery of a coin of Tiberius at Basing House (1909, 4). Tile and pottery of Roman date have been a feature of the recent excavations at the site (see p93).

The course of the Roman road from Silchester to Chichester passes close to Basing. There was a Roman enclosure, as well as field boundaries and pits, at Cowdery's Down, and a number of stray finds have been made to the north of that site at Chineham brickworks and Daneshill House. The rescue excavations at Daneshill (Millett & Schadla-Hall, *op cit*) uncovered Romano-British ditches and a pit with evidence of 3rd century iron-working. Hypocaust tiles, tesserae and pottery finds suggest the existence of another villa to the north-east on the River Loddon, near Blackland's Farm, while pottery and a Roman coin were found in sandpit workings south of Oliver's Battery (Williams-Freeman 1918; Applebaum 1953).

The only archaeological evidence for Saxon settlement in the area to date is again from Cowdery's Down (Millett 1983) where a number of high status structures were revealed by excavation. Further west, the 6th-7th century grave discovered in 1899 at West Ham, in Basingstoke, produced a decorated copper alloy hanging bowl, bone gaming pieces and an iron vessel and weapons (Smith 1907-8). Saxon pottery has also been recovered from the lower layers at Basing House (see p61).

Documentary evidence: pre-Domesday

It is in the Saxon period that the first documentary evidence for Basing occurs, although most authorities now concur that Caedwal's late 7th century charter reference to *Basingahearh* (AS Charter No 232) is more likely to refer to a Sussex placename. In 871, according to the Anglo-Saxon Chronicles (Savage 1982), King Æthelred and Alfred his brother fought

the Danes at Basing, and the Danes were victorious. This battle would have been 'a fight for an important royal centre, a source of food supplies' (Hinton 1986, 162). By local tradition, the battle took place south of Basing, near Dickens Lane (Williams-Freeman 1953, 104) and the burial site was around Lychpit and Cowdery's Down, but there is no hard evidence for these legends. Rumble has pointed out, however, (Millett 1983) that the very name 'lychpit' ie 'pit where corpses have been or may be found', implies discovery and destruction of the feature giving the site its name in the first place. It is also possible that the cemetery revealed and presumably destroyed by chalk quarrying belonged to the early Saxon settlement at Cowdery's Down.

The Old English name 'Basing' means the place of the people associated with Basa (Rumble in Millett *op cit*), 'Basa' being a hypothetically reconstructed personal name, but one that has a secure parallel in continental German (Coates 1989, 29). There is also a significant link with Saxon London, for the name Basinghall Street in the city is derived from *Basingahaga* - the *haga*, or enclosure, of the Basings (Hinton *op cit*). This holding, possibly founded in the 7th century, would have constituted a safe haven and would have been associated with control of the road to and from the west.

More secure mention is made of Basing in three Saxon charters (Finberg 1964, 42, 43 & 45; Sawyer 1968). In 945 King Edmund made over a number of estates to his priest Æthelnoth for 50 gold shillings, including the '*mansionem monasticam ad Basyngum*' (AS Charter No 505). The text continues '...which in our language is named *Cynniges hors croft*'. As Rumble explains (Millett *op cit*, 266), past commentators have taken this name to be a corrupt form of *Cynniges hors croft* and have therefore associated it with a reported modern field-name *King's Horse Croft* in Basing, near the ford over the River Loddon. This has led to a correlation being drawn between the 'monastic dwelling' and the castle at Oliver's Battery (see below). Even the authenticity of this field name is in doubt, however, and *Cynniges* may just mean a personal name, ie *Cynnig's horse-croft*. Wherever the exact location of these lands, a few years later (between 946-953) they were given by Æthelnoth to the New Minster at Winchester (AS Charter No 1418). An estate at Basing (but not necessarily the same one) was bequeathed by King Eadred to his mother between 951 and 955 (AS Charter No 1515).

Hughes (1989, 32) revisits the problem of the *mansio monastica*, and suggests that as there is no recorded monastic site at Basing, the charter probably refers to a monastic grange or manor house in the area, although a minster church at Basing with extensive land holdings may have had a *monasterium*. Documentary and cartographic evidence also suggest, somewhat tentatively, that the motte and bailey at Basing (see below) may have been built on the site of a property forming part of the Saxon minster.

Medieval monuments

William the Conqueror is thought to have passed through Basing on his circuitous advance on London in 1066 (Beeler 1966, 27). Moorhouse (1970, 32) suggests that he may have 'instigated the initial fortifications on the site'. He was certainly responsible for granting the manor to Hugh de Port, who took it as the chief of his fifty-five lordships in Hampshire (VCH, IV, 115), possibly because of the existence and importance of Basing and nearby Basingstoke in the 11th century (Hughes, *op cit* 37).

Hugh de Port could well have been Sheriff of Hampshire, a post definitely held by his son Henry, and a suitable dwelling for this high-powered family at their primary seat may have been a motte and bailey castle at the site known today as Oliver's Battery (SAM DoE No 24337). This monument lies 1 km north-east of Basing House, near the crossing of the River Loddon by the Roman road. The motte, at the north-west corner of the site, is c40m in diameter and survives to a height of 1.6m, although badly affected by ploughing. There are two baileys divided by a cross bank, and the entrance at the south-west corner is probably original (HBMC Warden Report 1984). The date of construction is not known, but a short-lived fall in the value of the land and manor of Basing between 1066 and 1068, might be attributable to the construction of a castle (Hughes 1989, 33).

It seems likely that Oliver's Battery was the original seat of the Norman manor of Basing, but after perhaps one or two centuries it was abandoned in favour of the site where Basing House now stands. The location may have retained its significance, however, as the lesser manor of Basing Byfleet (Hughes *ibid* 37). Basing Byfleet takes its name from Thomas Byfleet who owned the manor in 1389, but it had already become a separate holding by 1234. It was probably church land, granted to the newly founded Selborne Priory, and as such, echoed its pre-Conquest status (Hughes *ibid* 41).

The linear earthwork to the north of the village at Pyott's Hill (SAM DoE Hants No 128) has been interpreted as a medieval park pale (Crawford 1953, 196), and in 1302 this park belonged to John St John, holder of the manor and ringwork at Basing (Hughes *ibid* 37). Williams-Freeman describes it in detail (1915, 312, 396), and whilst pondering on its possible prehistoric date, he provides a good idea of its magnitude, of over 1.5km in length. A physical, and therefore chronological, link with Oliver's Battery can be argued. Aerial photographs have provided evidence of further linear features in the Basing area, but none as substantial as that at Pyott's Hill.

The fish ponds on the River Loddon north of the Grange were presumably of medieval origin and connected with the later castle. There is documentary evidence for a free fishery being an appurtenance of the manor in the 13th century (VCH, IV, 121). The ponds continued in use during the life of the House, and remains of brick sluices and Tudor brick revet-

ments are visible. Until recent years they were used for the cultivation of watercress.

Immediately to the east of Basing House, a rectilinear enclosure discovered by aerial photography was sectioned and tentatively assigned to the medieval period (see Chapter 3 p29). The scant evidence resulted in a date bracket of the 11th to 14th century.

Documentary evidence: post-Domesday

The first mention of a castle at Basing is contained within a grant by John de Port to Sherborne Priory (Dugdale 1830, vii, 1014) in the mid-12th century. He confirms the donations of his father, including the Chapel of St. Michael 'cum terra veteris castelli de Basing'. The mention of an 'old castle' has been taken by some to suggest that there were two fortifications at Basing.

In a grant dated 14 August 1261 (CPR Hen III 1258-66, 172), Robert de Sancto Johanne was given permission to fortify his house with a paling on the dyke 'now thrown up there'. Hughes (1989, 53) suggests that the existence of so primitive a form of defence in 1261 is unusual, and that the bank referred to may be an earlier work. He points out that the word *extracta* bracketed in the text of the Patent Roll volume could be interpreted as 'outside' or 'extension' rather than 'built up'. The difficulty is in knowing whether this reference relates to the large ringwork which became Basing House, or to some outwork. Also worthy of note is the fact that Robert was granted land in the manor of Basing by the King in 1254, who had confiscated it from his father after some undisclosed misdemeanor (VCH, IV, 116).

Edward I visited Basing in 1285 (Letters Patent dated there on 10th January and 10th August, CPR), and presumably saw the work which his predecessor had authorised. A 14th century reference which confirms the grant of St. Michael's Chapel 'of the old castle' at Basing (CPR Ed III 1348-50, 355) has proved difficult to interpret. It has been offered as proof that Basing House was the site of the original castle (VCH, IV, 117), but this probably resulted from the mistranslation of 'in' for 'of' and there is no reason to suppose that the chapel was situated within a castle, or that the castle in question was the House.

The castle is not mentioned again until 1531 when a licence was granted to Sir William Paulet, (Fig 2) then Master of the King's Wards, 'to build walls and towers within and around and to fortify the manor Basyng, and to impark 300 acres of land and 20 acres of wood at and about the said manor' (LPFD Hen VIII, V, 1531-2, 37). Perhaps this 'imparking' refers to the 'New Park' south of the House, later to be the site of the new family seat at Hackwood. With regard to the building work, it is presumed that Paulet first took the ringwork and turned it into a splendid enclosed group of halls and courts. This became known as the 'Citadel' or 'Old House' at the time of the siege. He then built, to the north-east, a brand new dwelling (known as the 'New House'), which was said to have been a very magnificent building, finer

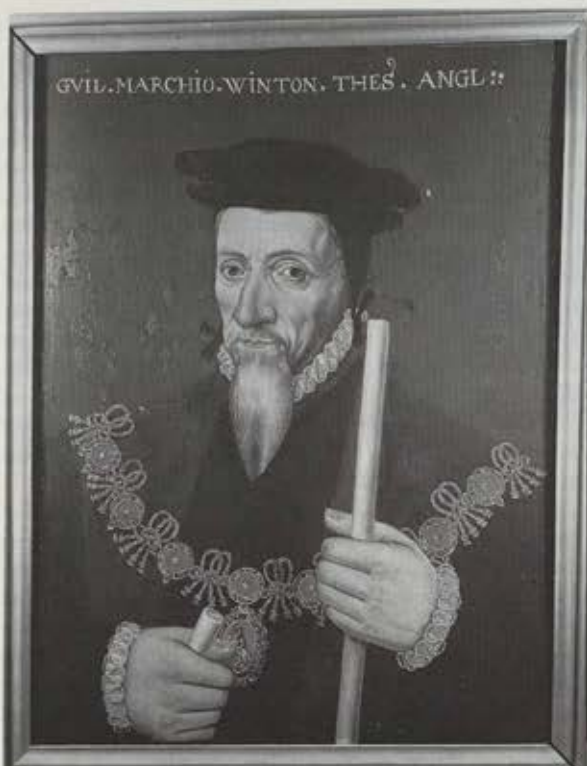


Fig 2 Portrait of William Paulet, the first Marquess of Winchester (died 1572).



Fig 3 Portrait of John Paulet the fifth Marquess of Winchester (died 1674).

than the Old House. This work is known to have been finished before Elizabeth's visit in 1600, and a stone found in early excavations dates the completion of some work to 1561, although it is not certain to what this refers. Paulet was made Lord Treasurer in 1550, and became first Marquess of Winchester in 1551. He died in 1572, to be followed by John until 1576, then William, another William in 1598, and another John (the fifth Marquess, Fig 3) in 1628 who was to see the House through its most turbulent episode.

A number of royal visits were made to Basing in the 16th and early 17th centuries. In a letter dated 16th October 1535, Paulet tells Thomas Cromwell that 'The King ... has changed his giests and will be at my poor house of Basing on Tuesday and Wednesday'. Another letter written on the 21st shows that Henry VIII was indeed present at the house (LPFD IX, 1535, 619, 620, 650). Edward VI is known to have been there in September 1550, and four years later Queen Mary and her new husband Philip of Spain visited the House en route to Windsor, following their wedding in Winchester Cathedral (Moorhouse 1970, 33). Elizabeth I made several visits to both Basing House and the neighbouring Wyne, where the Sandys family no doubt vied with the Paulets in the creation of their own Tudor mansion. Documents were dated at Basing in 1560 and 1603, and Elizabeth is mentioned 'in her progress' at Basing in 1591, 1594 and 1601 (CSPD 1591-4, 97 & 504; 1580-1625, 428; 1601-3, 98 & 504). In 1601 she is said to have 'graciously entertained the Frenchmen'

at both Basing and the Wyne. This visit may have financially ruined or embarrassed the fourth Marquess, and it is recorded in the 1607 edition of Camden's *Magna Britannia* that 'the first Marquess had made his house so splendid that part had to be pulled down again' (Peers 1909). In addition the diarist Peter Mundy visited Basing in 1634-35 and described it as 'now forsaken and desolate' (Keast, 1984).

The English Civil War and the siege of Basing House

The history of the Civil War skirmishes and sieges at Basing House is well-documented and will not be repeated here, except where it affects the archaeological interpretation of the site. For further information, see Godwin 1882 (Revised 1904) and 1906, Warren 1907, Oppe 1915, Emberton 1972, and Adair 1981.

During the Siege, a diary was kept by someone in the garrison. It was later attributed to the Marquess himself (and printed as 'A Description of the Siege of Basing Castle kept by the Lord Marquise of Winchester'), but it is more likely that it was written by the Marchioness, or by Dr Thomas Fuller (Moorhouse 1970, 35). It begins with a description of the House.

Basing Castle ... stands on a rising ground, having its forme circular, encompassed with a brick

rampart lined with earth, and a very deep trench but dry. The loftie Gate-house with foure turrets looking northwards, on the right whereof without the compasse of the ditch, a goodly building containing two faire courts, before them is the *Graunge*, severed by a wall and common roade, againe divided from the foot of *Cowdrey's Downe* by meades, rivulets, and a river running from Basingstoake, a mile distant to the west, through Basing towne, joyning upon the east, the south side of the castle hath a parke, and towards *Basing towne*, a little wood, the place seated and built as if for Royaltie, having a proper motto *Aymez Loyalte*. (Adair 1981)

The House was first attacked in July 1643 by Colonel Norton, who was repelled by the small force of musketeers which had just arrived following Paulet's appeal to the King. In the summer of 1643, the fortifications of the house were strengthened, earthen ramparts were constructed 'round or inside the outer walls' (Oppe 1915), and guns were mounted on the roof and earthworks. The appearance of the house after this is recorded in 'The Soldier's Report', an anonymous account from a Parliamentarian perspective (Adair 1981) as follows:

This place is very strongly fortified the walles of the houses are made thick and strong to beare out cannon bullet, and the house built upright, so that no man can command the rooffe, the windowes thereof are guarded by the outer walles, and there is no place open in the house save onely for certain drakes which are on the top of the said house wherewith they are able to play upon our Army though we discern them not.

The house is as large and as spacious as the Tower of London, and is strongly walled about with earth raised against the wall, of such a thicnesse, that it is able to dead the greatest cannon bullet, besides they have a great store both of ammunition and victuals, to serve for supply a long time and in the wall are divers pieces of ordnance about the house.

The work proved to be necessary. Later that year, Sir William Waller surrounded the House for a week in November, taking up positions at the Grange, the church and Cowdrey's Down, and attacking the house with heavy gun fire. A party from the garrison managed to recapture the Grange by burning down the outhouses containing its stores, and fighting stopped for a few days.

In a renewed attack, an attempt was made to break down the doors of a gatehouse with a petard (an explosive device), but this failed. In a letter describing the siege, Waller explained that the petardier 'mistooke the place; for whereas he should have applied to a place in the ould wall which was but a brick and a half thick, he sett it against a doore that was bricked upp and lined with earth, so that it tooke no effect' (Hist MSS Comm 1891; Adair 1981). This is slightly at variance with the account of a lieutenant, Elias

Archer (Adair 1981), who claimed that the petard was set against a wall, which he said 'was so thicke and strongly lined and supported with earth and turfe within side' that the petard was of no use. A third account, in Mercurius Aulicus (Adair 1981) records that 'the rebels ... clap a great petard on the jaume of the gate having intelligence ... of the weakest place, the gate itself being so dammed up within that it was not to be forced.' This source also mentions buildings at the north end of the site from which the 'rebels' were themselves attacked. While the assault was taking place, the women of the house were apparently on the roof, pelting the men below with stones and bricks. Waller withdrew after sustaining a large number of casualties and desertions, and in the face of appalling weather conditions. The damage was hurriedly patched up by the garrison within a couple of days.

In June 1644, the Parliamentary forces seized the church and the village, which they fortified, and on the 19th June much of the village was fired. By the 24th the House was again surrounded, and the besiegers dug earthworks to strengthen their positions. Within the next month, fresh guns were set up at the church, in the wood below the New House, at the Delve (Oliver's Dell) and at Oliver's Battery, but in early September the Parliamentary forces under Col Norton again withdrew, following a relief expedition from Oxford. For a few weeks the garrison had free range in the village and was able to collect provisions, until the church was repossessed by the Roundheads. The Siege Diary (Adair 1981) records the ruination of various parts of the House during the next few months. A round tower in the old castle was foundered on August 10th, a breach was made in 'one of our square towers' on August 19th, and another of the 'great brick towers' was foundered on September 2nd. A breach was made in the 'new building' by battering down a stack of chimneys three days later, and on October 17th part of a ruined tower was blown down in a storm 'on five of our men, killing one, and somewhat bruis[ing] the rest'. An engraving attributed to Wenceslaus Hollar (c1644), shows one tower to the south of the Old House which was 'halfe battered downe' (Fig 4). The situation continued until November, when an order came to raise the siege, before another successful relief expedition reached the House.

There seems to have been relative peace in the area for approximately nine months. Then in August of 1645, Dalbier took the church and fortified it. Heavy fire was directed against the New House throughout September, since he felt that this was the weakest point. He was proved right, as was recorded in the Puritan paper, the 'Weekly Account': 'after many shots against the midst of the house, which loosened the bricks and made a long crack in the wall, he made another shot or two at the top of the House which brought down the high turret, the fall whereof so shook that part of the house, which before was weakened, that the outmost wall fell down at once, inso-much that our men could see bedding and other goods fall out of the House into the court'.



A. THE OLDE HOUSE. B. THE NEW. C. THE TOWER THAT IS HALFE BATTERED DOWNE. D. THE KIRGES BREAST WORKS. E. THE PARLIAMENTS BREAST WORKS.

Fig 4 The engraving attributed to Wenceslaus Hollar, which depicts the siege from the south (c1644).

On the 8th October, Lt General Oliver Cromwell and a brigade of 6000 men from the New Model Army arrived. Guns were placed at the church battery, and a new battery was built to the south-east of the house in the park. From the 12th to the 13th there was constant cannonading from these two batteries, and at 6am on Tuesday 14th October 1645 the house was stormed. One regiment entered through the New House (Cromwell's letter to the Speaker, Adair 1981), whilst on the park side the garrison was beaten from their strongest work, which held a cannon. Ladders were placed over the earthwork and trench, and the Parliamentarians scaled the wall of the inner house. Over 100 of the garrison were killed, and the rest, including the Marquess, were taken prisoner. 'Loyalty House' was no more.

After this, Cromwell recommended to the Commons that Basing House should be 'utterly slighted for these following reasons: It will ask about Eight-hundred men to manage it; it is no frontier; the country is poor about it; the place exceedingly ruined by our batteries and mortar pieces, and by a fire which fell upon the place since our taking it' (Cromwell's letter to the Speaker, in Carlyle 1849). That his advice was heeded is attested in the Commons Journals (IV, 309), where it is recorded that 'whoever will come for brick or stone shall freely have the same for his pains'.

Aftermath

A number of documents and descriptions relate to the time immediately after the fall of the Basing House. There is, however, a dearth of household records. It was reported that the estate papers were burnt during the fire following the siege, and it seems that many other documents were lost.

'The Soldier's account of the fall' (Adair 1981) describes the prizes taken during the plunder. These

included 'ten pieces of ordnance, twenty barrels of powder, and matches proportionable, nine colours, 200 arms, 200 horse, the rooms and chambers in both houses completely furnished, which afforded the soldiers gallant pillage; provisions of victuals for some years rather than months, 400 quarters of wheat, 300 fitches of bacon, 200 barrels of beef, 40,000 lbs of cheese, beer, divers cellars full, and that very good. A bed in one room, furnished, cost 1,300£ great store of popish books, with copes and such utensils: silver plate, valued at 5000£, some cabinets of jewels, and other treasure; one soldier had six score pieces of gold for his share...The wheat, household goods and lumber, with a great part of the other pillage, was sold to the country people, who likewise had a good part of the prey, and carried many cartloads away, the house was burnt down and demolished'.

Hugh Peters, Chaplain to the Train of Artillery, made a report to the House of Commons 'that he came to Basing House some time after the storm and took a view first of the works; which were many, the circumvallation being above a mile in compass. The Old House had stood (as it is reported) two or three hundred years, a nest of Idolatry; the New House surpassing that, in beauty and stateliness; and either of them fit to make an emperor's court'. He lists the prisoners and prizes taken, and says that the plunder by the soldiers continued until Tuesday night. They were apparently very thorough: 'In all these great buildings, there was not one iron bar left in all the windows (save only what were on fire) before night. And the last work of all was the lead; and by Thursday morning they had hardly left one gutter about the House. And what the soldiers left, the fire took hold on; which made more than ordinary haste; leaving nothing but bare walls and chimneys in less than twenty hours'. The fire he attributed to the neglect of 'the Enemy' in not having quenched a fire-ball.



Fig 5 The ruins of Basing House viewed from the north-east; the engraving by John Dunstall, published by Peter Stent in 1653, from the Sutherland Collection.

Dr. Thomas Fuller, author of 'The Worthies of England' (Freeman 1952, 201), was at the House in 1644. In his book, he described it as follows:

Basing ... was the greatest of any subject's house in England, yea larger than most ... of the King's palaces. The motto, 'Love Loyalty', was often written in every window thereof, and was well practised in it, when, for resistance on that account, it was lately levelled to the ground.

As well as the engraving attributed to Hollar made during the Siege (Fig 4), there is a drawing of the House by John Dunstall (Fig 5), which was probably made shortly after the fall, and published in 1653 by Peter Stent. This also exists as a number of poor later versions which show a fictitious wide expanse of water crossed by a causeway to the Garrison Gate.

The lands of the Marquess were sequestered by the Commonwealth from the fall until 1649. In December 1648, interest in the House was reawakened when information was received from Humphrey Bury 'that in or near Basing House ... there are hid and buried plate, money, arms and other goods, belonging to an engineer and a Dutchman, who were in arms in the house against Parliament' (CCAM). Bury requested permission to search for the goods at

his own expense. An order was then made that Richard Cole and Bury should 'dig and search for the said goods, and seize them, if found, for disposal by this committee'. In January 1649, there is a note that Henry de Ballieul was to appear before the committee 'touching treasure hidden in Basing House'. The outcome of this is unknown, but presumably it forms the basis for the story of a golden calf buried at the House, which was highlighted by the media during excavations in the 1960s (see Chapter 3 p27).

Restoration to present day

In 1650 the Committee for Compounding (CCC Vol I, 348) granted the lands of the Marquess of Winchester to Robert Wallop, but the estates were restored to the Paulets in 1662 (VCH, IV, 116). Rather than attempt to rebuild the Old House, they built, c1690, a new residence to the north, across the village street next to the Grange. This was demolished c1740 (Peers 1909) following a fire. Prosser (1842) described the surviving elements: 'There are on the north side of the road, opposite the ruins, piers of well executed brickwork, which formed the approach to a 'convenient lodging' which the first Duke of Bolton built of the ruins. This was subsequently burnt, and the remains pulled down by



BASING HOUSE, HAMPSHIRE.
in the ruinous state it appeared in the Year 1760.
Published, March. 2. 1795.

Fig 6 The ruined Basing House viewed from the south-west.

Charles, the Third Duke...'. The piers of the entrance gate survive as part of a the wall running along the north side of the street (see p17), and Peers (1904, 81) likens this exquisite brickwork to a gateway at Titchfield House. The fifth Marquess apparently never returned to Basing, spending his last days (d 1674) at Englefield House in Berkshire (Moorhouse 1970, 36). The new house was probably the work of his son Charles, first Duke of Bolton from 1689. He was certainly responsible for the new family seat at Hackwood Park, built in 1683-7 (Pevsner & Lloyd 1967) probably on the site of an Elizabethan lodge (VCH).

Compared with the vast amount of information available for the few years of the siege, what follows is something of a 'dark age' for Basing House. It is unlikely that the new Duke of Bolton thought very highly of the ruins, and they were probably used as a quarry for the new building at the Grange. There is some evidence that he also used them for fruit growing (see below), but otherwise they appear to have been left to decay for a number of years.

Celia Fiennes visited the site twice in the 1690s (Morris 1982). In 1691 she recorded that the house

was 'not fine being much demolished and spoyled after the Civil Warres', but on her second visit (probably before 1696) she mentions 'the gardens which are improved and new walls built fine fruit and vineyards a large parke to it'. A later account (Pococke 1754 in Batey 1987) describes 'a round enclosure encompassed with a double ditch, inner fosse very deep. The area within above an acre - it was made into a vineyard in the last century which has been destroyed. . . . Below the castle is a bowling green and a large garden with turrets in it'.

Although the ruins were clearly being used as a garden in the latter years of the 17th century, it is not certain that landscaping occurred then, and this process may have taken place during the following century when visiting romantic ruins became a popular pastime for the upper classes. The history of the gardens has been studied in depth (Batey, *ibid*) and will not be repeated here.

A drawing of the site made in 1760 and published in 1795 (Fig 6) shows the Walled Garden to the left, a still extant small timber building, and the west side of the Citadel with brick walls on top of the banks and trees growing on the ramparts. The late 18th

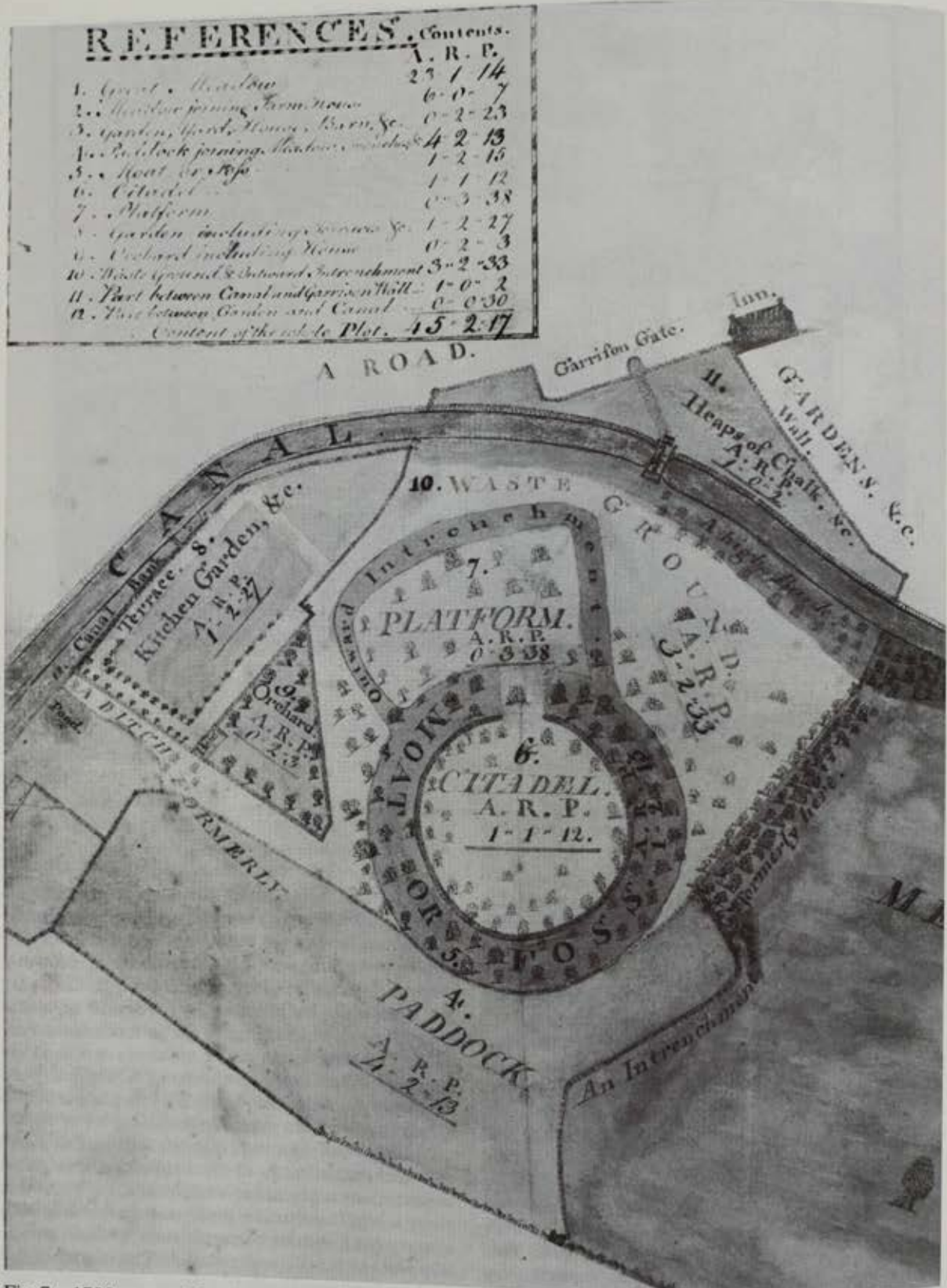


Fig 7 1798 map of the Basing Estate by William Brown (HRO 11M49 E/B1/22). 'A Plan and Survey of a Plot of Land lying near Basing in Hampshire, The Property of the Hon. Lord Bolton, Survey'd January 1st 1798 by William Brown.'

century (1788–1794) saw the construction of the Basingstoke Canal. Its course ran to the south of the village but cut across the north part of Basing House. It sliced through the remains of the New House and then ran between the Bailey and Garrison Gate before curving around the Walled Garden. It is possible that there was originally an external ditch here, and that the canal builders used this to save themselves work.

A survey of the site was made by William Brown in 1798 to record land use in the area (Fig 7). It shows the Walled Garden in use as a 'Kitchen Garden &c.', the site of a 'House' in the corner of the orchard, a wall running around the interior of the Citadel and trees growing on the Citadel banks and bailey. Two visitors to the site in 1799, Moses Barton Legg and James Exall, recorded that the oblong flat area in front of the keep was still used as a bowling green, and that 'Round the top of the keep was a parapet wall, full four feet high above the gravel walk', and part of the gravel was still remaining (Chandler 1827). Prosser (1842) states that 'The citadel or keep was circular, around it was a parapet wall above four feet high from

the gravel, now destroyed . . . the north gateway is yet standing, bearing the family arms and motto with the date 1562 . . . the outward entrenchments have been rendered very obscure and imperfect from some improvements in the grounds . . .'

The 19th and early 20th centuries saw a number of visits to the site by antiquarians and others. Descriptions appear in most regional travel guides of the period, but many of these are derived from the same source, perhaps one of the early guide-books to the site. The best accounts, which include information on the early excavations (see Chapter 3 p25) are by Godwin (1882, 1904, 1906), Warren (1907), and Peers (1909). Further excavations were carried out on the site in the 1960s (see Chapter 3 p27), but not all of these have been published, and the best sources for some of this work are contemporary newspaper reports.

The site was purchased from the Hon Christopher Orde-Powlett in 1972 by Hampshire County Council, and excavations by the County Museums Service took place between 1978 and 1991.

Faint, illegible text at the top of the page, likely bleed-through from the reverse side.



Faint caption text at the bottom of the page, likely describing the image above.

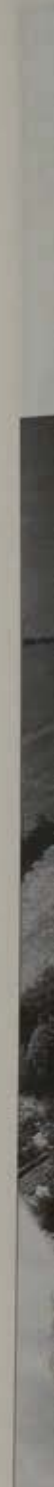


Fig
Gar
corn
Maj

Basin
a ext
palac
passi
builc

Chapter 2

The site today



Fig 8 Aerial photograph taken in 1949. The site of Basing House is unkempt, in contrast with the Walled Garden which is in its vegetable garden phase. Grange Farm and the Great Barn occupy the lower right hand corner. © British Crown Copyright/MoD. Reproduced with the permission of the controller of Her Britannic Majesty's Stationery Office.

Basing House in its 16th century heyday consisted of a extensive private residence which rivalled the royal palaces in its magnificence, and a vast estate encompassing parks, a Great Barn and numerous other farm buildings, fish ponds, and mills. The focus of Basing

House today is the complex of ruins located within the 18 acres managed by Hampshire County Council, and this is the area where most of the archaeological work has taken place (Fig 8). Other elements of the original grand design still exist, in the form of land

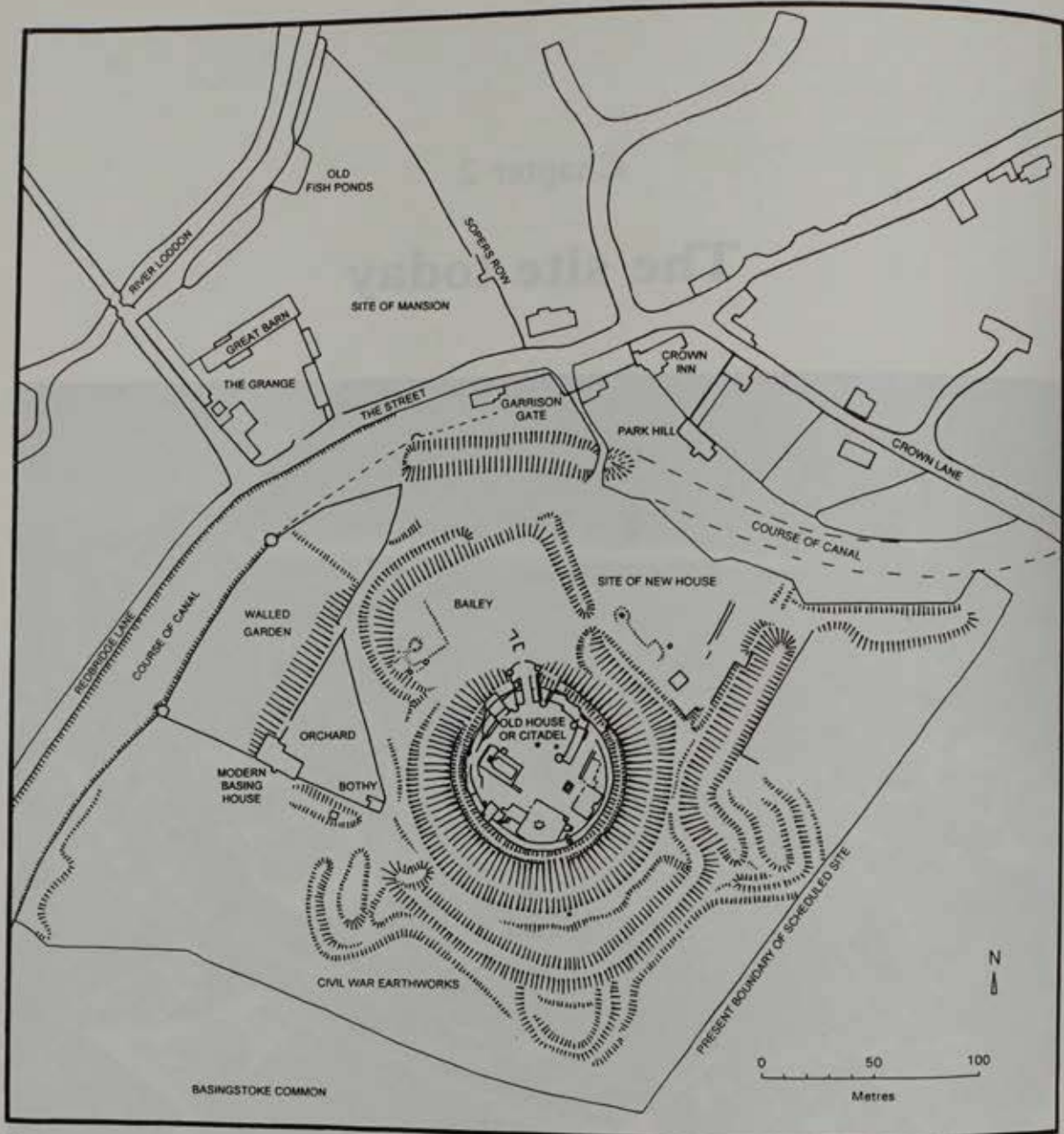


Fig 9 The Site Today – Map showing the component parts of the Basing landscape as described in the text. Listed buildings are outlined. Based upon Ordnance Survey material with the permission of the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office, © Crown Copyright License No MC88308M0001.

boundaries and earthworks, fish ponds and buildings such as the Great Barn, but much of the overall layout is steadily disappearing beneath burgeoning Basing. This chapter divides the site and its surrounds into a number of component parts in order to consider the surviving remains (Fig 9).

Old Basing

The last fifty years have seen the village of Basing or Old Basing change from a working agricultural community to a mainly dormitory settlement for people employed in Basingstoke and London. Much of the

village, including the House itself, is designated as a Conservation Area (Basingstoke and Deane Borough Council Planning Department 1980).

Many of the older properties in the village are built or rebuilt from materials salvaged from the remains of Basing House, and Peers (1909, 11) in referring to the Parliamentary edict allowing local people to take brick and stone and 'keep it for their pains', states that 'several of the houses in the village have a moulded stone plinth which shows how this permission was used'. One such example is the pair of two storey cottages Nos 10 and 12 The Street (DoE List No 22/54), on the corner with Crown Lane (Fig 10).

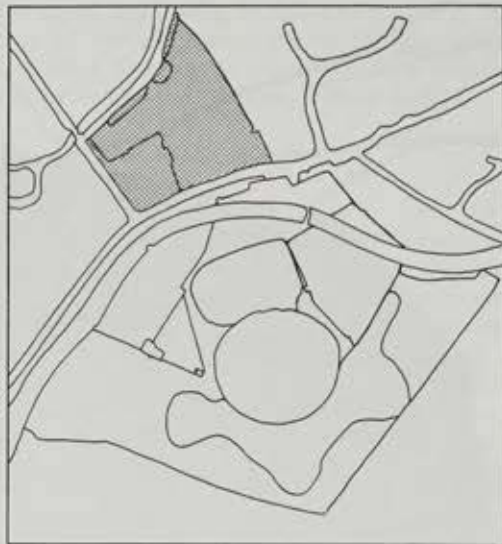


Fig 10 17th century house on the corner of The Street and Crown Lane, built with material taken from Basing House ruins.

This building has a high brick plinth with stone capping below moulded first- and second-floor brick and tile bands. Other houses built with reused architectural features or 'Old Basing' bricks include No 1 Crown Lane (DoE List No 22/56), No 2 Crown Lane (DoE List No 22/58), Nos 3 and 5 Crown Lane (DoE List No 22/57), No 3 The Street (DoE List No 22/44), No 7 The Street (DoE List No 22/45) and Church Lane House, (DoE List No 22/33). Park House Farmhouse in Crown Lane (DoE List No 22/35, once known as Parkers Farmhouse) is a 17th century building with a half-octagonal projecting staircase block on the south front, perhaps imitating the shape of the turrets in the estate curtain wall.

The parish church of St Mary's (DoE List No 22/31) has very strong connections with Basing House, containing the tombs of most of the early Marquesses of Winchester. It was severely damaged by fighting during the sieges when it served as a gun platform and fort for the attacking Parliamentary forces. The building was originally a cruciform Norman structure, and two arches of the central tower remain, complete with 13th century painted plaster. The church was rebuilt almost entirely of local brick in the 16th century, but suffered so much during the Civil War that it was repaired by national subscription in 1664.

The Grange



The Grange area of Basing House was purchased by Hampshire County Council in 1990 and it is intended that it will eventually become consolidated in some way with the present Basing House land holdings. This area contains the magnificent 16th century Great Barn, various 18th/19th century farm buildings, a farm house of c1720, a late 18th century timber granary upon staddle stones, brick-lined Tudor stew ponds and the site of the Duke of Bolton's mansion of c1690.

The Great Barn

SAM DoE Hants No 85
DoE List No 22/41

The Great Barn at Basing is known locally as the 'Tithe Barn', but was not used for the collection of ecclesiastical tithes. It was built of brick in the early 16th century as the estate barn, and has been described as one of the finest later medieval barns in the country. It measures 36.6m in length and 10.7m in width and is divided externally into six bays by buttresses, with two tall arched entrances at the second and fifth bay (Fig 11). Each bay has three ventilating slots at two levels. The direction of unloading is indicated by the entrances which are 4.6m high to the south (the yard), and 3.4m in height to the north. The steep gabled tile roof (13.1m maximum height) is a masterpiece of construction, although the carpenters evidently did not work closely with the masons who built the 1m thick walls: the five brick buttresses only match the eleven trusses in one location. The roof was restored in the 1980s because battens were rotting, but the main timbers are in good condition (Fig 12). A dendrochronological survey of the structural timber gave a date for felling of 1534/35 (Miles 1997).

High on the walls can be seen several signs of damage from cannon fire. It is likely that the original barn was hit many times, as it stood directly between opposing artillery. The barn was often a key objective



Fig 11 Basing Grange – The Great Barn, exterior.



Fig 12 Basing Grange – The Great Barn, interior.

during skirmishes, offering much needed shelter beneath the Royalist held walls.

Grange Farmhouse
DoE List No 22/38

This farmhouse situated at the corner of The Street and Swing Swang Lane is of early 18th century date. It has an L-shaped plan of two storeys with an attic, a hipped tile roof and plain boxed eaves. The walls are of red brickwork in Flemish bond, with a first-floor band, cambered openings, and plinth.

Outbuildings
DoE List No 22/40

The cart shed and outbuildings consist of a long range, with the earlier northern part (18th century) having an open east side, and outer wall of brickwork. The roof of eight bays has a Queen Post truss and is tiled with hipped roof at the northern end. The remaining stable and storage units are of mid 19th century date and are of brick and tile. The road side wall of this complex has remains of 16th century construction, and an apparent musket loop dating from the siege.

Granary
DoE List No 22/39

The granary is of late 18th century date (dendrochronological evidence). It is rectangular in form



Fig 13 View from the south of one of the two blocked gateways which originally led to the late 17th century mansion.

on 12 staddle stones, with a steep hipped tile roof and vertical tongued weather-boarding. In recent times the door has been relocated in the centre of the north-east side.

Wall C16

DoE List No 22/43

The roadside wall from Grange Farm to Sopers Row, a terrace of cottages, is c1.8m in height. It is built of Tudor bricks, mainly header bond, with a plinth. The wall has two 18th century gateways, now blocked, with piers of finely jointed brickwork in Flemish bond (Fig 13). The base of each pier is in stone with a column base moulding. Part of the wall has a weathered top. These gateways led to the mansion built soon after the Restoration with material from Basing House. As mentioned above, it was demolished c1740 after a fire, by Charles the third Duke, and the materials are said to have been taken to build 'Cannons', near Kingsclere, and the George Inn at Basingstoke. There is one passing contemporary reference to the house by Daniel Defoe: 'The old house is indeed demolish'd; but the successor of the family, the first Duke of Bolton, has erected a very noble fabrick in the same place, or near it which, however, is not equal to the magnificence which fame gives to the ancient house.' (Defoe 1928, 180)

Fish Ponds, later used as watercress beds

Three small fish ponds, possibly of medieval origin, survive to the north-west of the Grange complex. Tudor brick revetments are visible in a number of places as well as the remains of brick sluices.

Water Mill

DoE List No 11/19

Bartons Mill and House, late 17th century, is a two-storeyed water mill (formerly the Old Basing Mill) extended and encased in the early 19th century. It has an old tiled roof, half-hipped at the south-east end. The building is timber-framed, clad in elm-boarding in the upper part, with exposed verticals below, now set in red brickwork of various ages and bonds. It last ground flour in 1945. It is now in private hands and serves as a pub' and restaurant.

Garrison Gate and remains of walls



Gateway

DoE List No 22/50

Garrison Gate is the sole surviving gateway into Basing House and is a listed Grade II building but is not, at the time of writing, classified as an Ancient Monument. The brick structure, originating in the mid-16th century, shows signs of considerable alteration over the years, and the rusticated battlements were added in the late Victorian period (Figs 14 & 15). The very weathered stone coat of arms, although certainly *in situ* by 1800, appears also to be a later addition, perhaps being repositioned there during the landscaping of the site in the 1690s. There is no gatehouse chamber.

Walls and Houses

DoE List Nos 22/48, 22/49, 22/52 & 22/59

Attached to the Gate on its east side is a mostly modern building, but the line of the curtain wall can be traced as far as the Crown public house, where it



Fig 14 19th century print of the Garrison Gate, Basing, etched by E J Roberts and published by Virtue & Co, London. Visible through the gateway is a fisherman leaning over the canal bridge.

turns south. It then continues as a wall with a high plinth in mainly English bond, incorporating Park Hill and running to the rear of No 6 Crown Lane. On the west side of the Garrison Gate a wall projects forward and then turns west as far as Mews Cottage.

Although heavily patched and pierced by a 19th century gate, its north face has blocked musket loops, and is clearly original. Repair work in 1991 revealed that the present ground surface is at least 1m higher than in the past. The wall is of red brickwork (English



Fig 15 1920s postcard of the Garrison Gate.

bond), about 2.4m high, and has a high plinth. A line of brick dentils continues below the top.

Turrets and Walls DoE List No 22/47

In the garden of Turret Cottage are the remains of a multi-angular tower (Fig 16). The structure stands virtually to its original height of 4.3m, including



Fig 16 'The Turret', once part of the curtain wall, now isolated on the north bank of the dry canal.

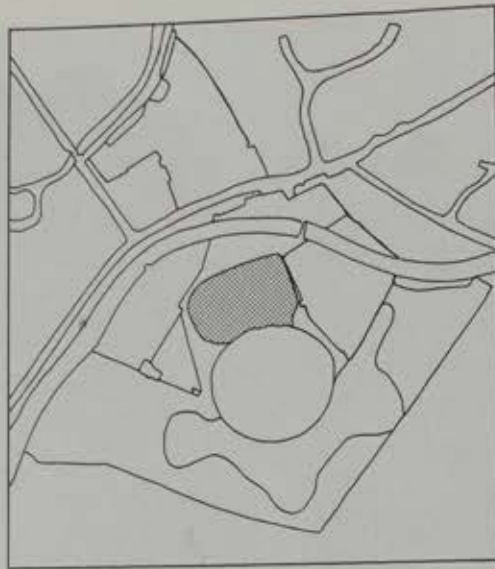
battlements. It is composed of red brickwork in English bond, with a blue diaper pattern above a high plinth. Another short section of wall is attached to the west side of Turret Cottage. The tower, and its attendant walls once formed part of the outer circuit of Basing House (shown as a dashed line on Fig 9). Large sections of this wall have disappeared with the passage of time, but the surviving fragments and occasional glimpses of foundations show what a substantial structure it was. (For a description of the curtain wall in the Walled Garden, see p21.)

Five Ways Junction

Road widening in 1964 at Five Ways junction (where Crown Lane meets Park Lane) allowed investigations by the Basingstoke Museum. The work revealed foundations of a brick structure of 16th century date which was possibly an entrance lodge for Basing House and Park. Among the finds were a medieval iron hunting arrowhead, medieval pottery, animal bone, iron door furniture, window lead and glass. Some of the features investigated by Pike and Combley (1964, 19) may relate to this line of access.

Bailey

This large rectangular earthen platform lies to the north of the Old House and is surrounded on three sides by a dry ditch over 7.5m deep. The northern section of V-shaped ditch and retaining bank are particularly impressive although partially filled at the eastern end by canal spoil. This spoil has also been



spread over the berm between the ditch and the canal, making the recognition of Tudor and mediaeval ground levels and Tudor wall footings difficult. The ditches to the east and west are shallower, but both contain remains of brick bridge abutments.

There are no traces of a perimeter wall on the bailey, although on the western side the remains of a gatehouse can be discerned. It consists of a rectangular foundation with octagonal tower bases at each corner. The gatehouse was partially exposed in Victorian times, and has been cleaned on occasions since then. The building is not obviously identifiable on either the Dunstall or Hollar engravings of the House. A low ridge which runs east from the area of this gatehouse may have formed the boundary for the bowling green mentioned by 18th century writers, otherwise the bailey appears to be barren of features.

The bailey is one of the best places to understand the strength of Basing House. The view north shows how the castle commanded the valley, whilst the view to the south shows how the ringwork stands like an island, although the 'moats' were dry. The area has not been excavated, but it is likely in the medieval period it contained a scatter of buildings. In Tudor times it may have become a formal open space. Local lore calls it the 'Bowling Green', and this was a popular game in Elizabethan times.

Old House or Citadel

SAM No 3 DoE Hants No 7

The Old House defences consist of a circular bank and ditch of massive proportions, over 90m in diameter, enclosing just over 1 acre (0.41 ha). The bank stands to a variable height, as much as 8m in places; while the ditch has a depth where extant of 4m and a width of 12m. The main gateway is located to the north. The interior of the citadel contains visible foundations and cellars revealed by Lord Bolton's excavations, but the greater part of the area is grass covered. The gatehouse as displayed consists of twin

rectangular chambers with four corner towers, and a restored flint cobble passageway between.

The Citadel earthwork and outlying siege works once excited interest in the unlikely theory that they utilised a prehistoric monument, (eg Godwin 1904, 85) but Williams-Freeman describes the site as a 'ring and bailey. . . rare in England compared with the mount type' (1915, 42). He gives two other examples in Hampshire, Ashley and Merdon castles, and draws attention to Old Sarum and Ludgershall in Wiltshire. More recent authorities, Renn (1973, 102) and King (1983, 189), both list the Old House as a large ringwork.

After the excavations the Old House was opened to public view by Lord Bolton, but following his death in 1922 the area fell into neglect. In World War II it was used as rifle and Lewis gun butts. Renewed archaeological interest in the 1960s mostly focused on other parts of the site, but considerable conservation work has taken place since 1972, when the site was purchased by Hampshire County Council.

The Old House was built around several courtyards, of which the fan-shaped court inside the main gate was the largest. It is cobbled with flint in the same manner as the entrance passage, and has an elaborate drainage system. The central well is about 15.2m deep. The most spacious cellar lay beneath the Great Hall, and has been fully excavated. The kitchen was a six-sided building, and traces of the foundations can be seen between the cellar and the ovens, which were built into the ringwork bank.

On the west side of the circuit is the mouth of a tunnel, brick-lined and currently 90m in length, extending outside beyond the ditch. This was part of a well-developed system of drainage. To the east is the clear indication of a postern gate, examined at various times this century. It seems that there was also a sally gate to the south, approached 'by what was probably a drawbridge over the moat; only its foundations now exist' (VCH 1911, 119). The remainder of the house plan is difficult to interpret, but lesser courtyards, buildings, rooms and cellars are open to view and spec-

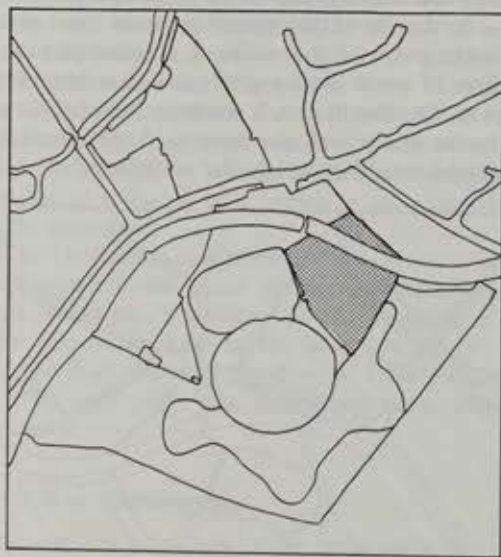


ulation. Around the summit of the ringwork are the rough footings of brick walls, probably built in the late 17th century, as part of the garden phase. A low retaining wall built just inside the ringwork may also belong to this landscaping activity but its purpose remains uncertain. It is colloquially known as the 'cricket boundary wall' but this name derives from the Victorian era when the game was apparently played in this arena (D Jackson, pers comm).

New House

Little of the New House is currently visible, and this makes it the most difficult area of the site to understand. Two hundred years ago the canal cut through the north-east side, isolating one range of buildings and damaging another. In addition, the foundations unearthed a century ago by Lord Bolton's work, though initially exposed, are now mostly hidden. The plans drawn at that time show a gatehouse commanding a bridge from the bailey, and there may also have been a second gate at the eastern corner. The most interesting observable feature of the New House is the 'Roman well', a name bestowed upon it in Victorian times. This vast Tudor shaft, 3.4m diameter and 15.2m deep, was lined with brick, at the base of which the massive oak template was still preserved. At the mouth was a substantial well-house, where animal power must have been harnessed to raise the water to an elevated tank.

More recently (1990, see Chapter 10) excavation has taken place on the north-west wing. This revealed clear evidence for a stable, with a large central drain, and a long line of stalls. These features are now open to public view.



Walled Garden

DoE List Nos 22/61, 22/62 and 22/63

The principal wall which gives this area its name is the best surviving stretch of the original 16th century



curtain wall. Built of red brick, it runs along the north-west boundary, at a height of between 2.4m and 3.7m, with plinths at various levels and much of the weathered top now missing. Most sections are in English bond, and there are diaper patterns in blue headers in several parts. Non-conforming jointing and some header banding suggests that the two surviving interval towers (dovecotes) were originally matched by another similar structure, which stood midway between them. This may well have been dismantled at the time the canal was built; certainly the original link between this wall and the tower at Turret Cottage (see above) was demolished by the canal constructors (Fig 17), and the northernmost border of the garden is a later replacement built on a different alignment.

The southern dovecote is an irregular octagon with a conical, hipped tile roof surmounted by a finial; the eaves are formed of heavy beams on projecting brackets. Its western elevation is built of red brickwork in English bond, with incomplete diaper patterning in blue headers. The doorway has a heavy solid frame and in the roof above this is a dormer with a weather-boarded front of ledges and pigeon holes. Inside, the building is circular, with a casing of nesting boxes formed in chalk blocks interspersed with brick bands. Between the roof framing and a central floor block is a portent, a vertical spindle with arms supporting a ladder, for human access to the pigeon holes. The north, thatched tower has plainer brickwork, but does have indications of having once been fenestrated and also heavily patched. The nesting boxes only survive at the lower level.

The date at which these towers were converted to dovecote use is not known, and both appear to have been rebuilt on the garden side. Evidence of Civil War loop-holes for muskets and artillery survives in the northward facing aspects, however, and similar features are also visible at intervals in the curtain wall.

The south-western perimeter of the garden is enclosed by a brick wall, possibly of 18th/19th century date, which appears to follow the line of the original Tudor curtain. The south-eastern boundary is

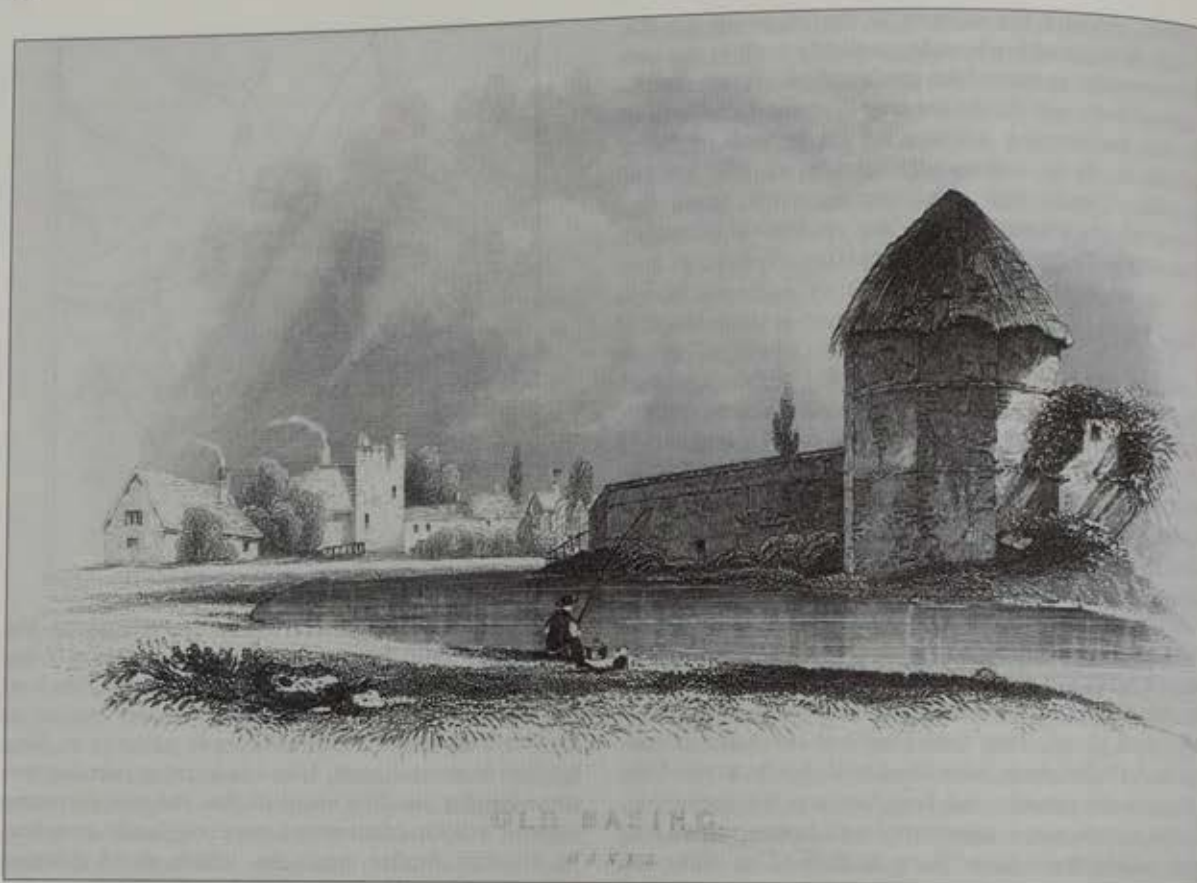


Fig 17 19th century print with the canal in the foreground showing the breach in the curtain wall. In the distance is the tower at Turret Cottage, and on the right the thatched dovecote.

formed partly by the 1960s extension of the building now known as Basing House, and by the 18th century orchard wall. The north-east enclosing wall has possible Tudor brickwork at its base.

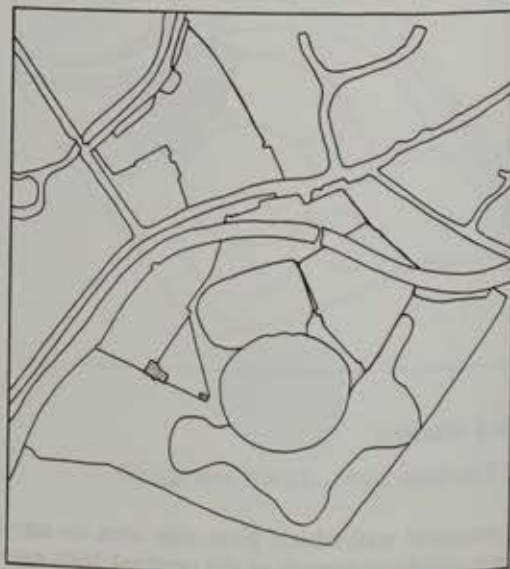
The terrace bounded by the curtain wall has been known as the Walled Garden since the 18th century. Trial trenching and excavation has revealed a number of wall foundations in this locality (see Chapter 9) but the original function of the area is not known. A reconstructed formal garden with 16th century plant types and layout was opened in 1991.

Bothy and modern Basing House

DoE List Nos 22/65 and 22/64

At the south-east corner of the Orchard stands a small brick building known as the 'Bothy'. It was raised by Lord Bolton in 1908 for use as a site museum. It has been described as a building of 'excessive rustic style', employing brickwork in Monk, Flemish and English bonds, but the structure does show evidence of earlier foundations, particularly in the basement, where there are three ruined but relined entrance arches. The engraving from the late 18th century shows what appears to be the remains of a square tower at this location, and a square building of some description is also shown on an early 18th century map (HRO 11M49 E/P 6).

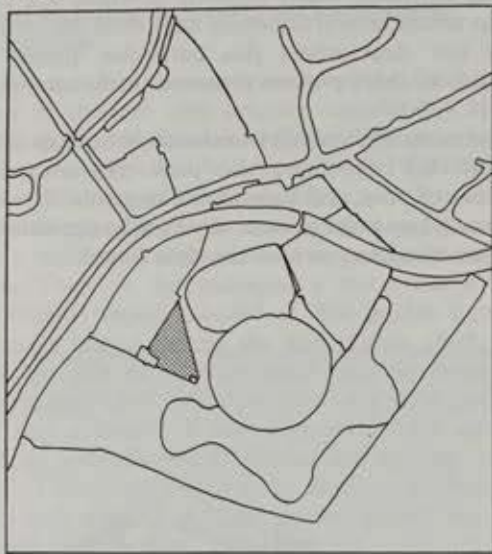
According to Godwin (1904, 83) the ruin was known locally as 'The Banking or Banqueting House', and this was expanded upon by Peers (1909, 7) '... on the site of the present museum there remain the lower parts of the walls of a sixteenth-century building of some size, vaguely called a banqueting house at the present day. It seems to have been a garden house at the end of a terrace. A wall from it to the citadel would complete the enclosure.'



Running away to the north-west of the Bothy is a brick revetted terrace which forms the southern boundary of the Orchard. The southern revetment wall is made up to a large extent by the original Tudor outer curtain wall of the site but has been rebuilt recently because of tree damage.

The terrace is terminated at its western end by the modern Basing House. This building was probably begun in the 18th century as a small lodge for the Duke of Bolton, and considerably altered and enlarged in Victorian times, with a further wing added in 1960. It is now houses an exhibition about Basing.

Orchard

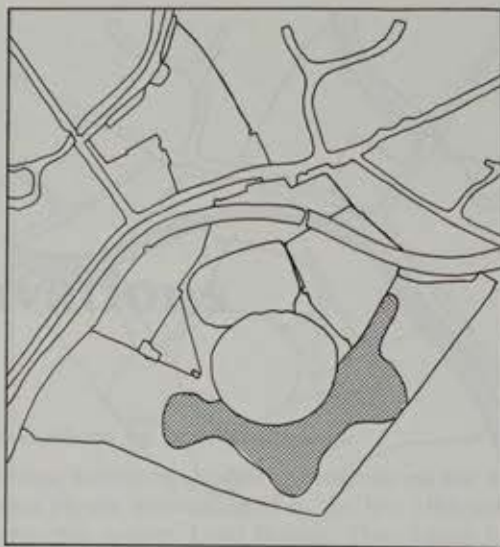


The Orchard occupies a triangular area with the 'Bothy' and modern Basing House at two of its corners. The fruit trees are very much in decline, and suffered considerably in a gale in 1990. The north-east wall of the orchard has been rebuilt on several occasions, and the most recent episode of collapse has revealed that the present wall stands partly on the remains of a Tudor wall, which is on a slightly different alignment.

The Orchard is also known as 'the cemetery' and is the reputed burial place of the casualties from the siege. Certainly, a number of human remains have been discovered here in the past (VCH, IV, 120) and the skull found in the Postern Gate excavations in 1991 (see p97) was re-interred here, with due ceremony.

Civil War Earthworks

The southern boundary of the monument is formed by earthworks which have their origins in the 12th century, but which were dramatically enlarged and altered in 1643-45. The original narrow southern outer bailey of the Norman castle, which appears to have defended the sally port of the Citadel, was converted, probably by Inigo Jones and the Dutch military engineer Van Derblin, into a rampier for the Old House.



The rampier, in turn, was defended at each end by raised gun platforms, protected by half moons to their fronts. The rampier has a broad salient angle which is defended by an eccentrically positioned four-sided earthwork which may be the 'Park Bastion' referred to in contemporary Civil War reports. This earthwork was disturbed by archaeological excavation of the underlying Romano-British building in the 1960s (Combley *et al*) and these trenches are still visible.

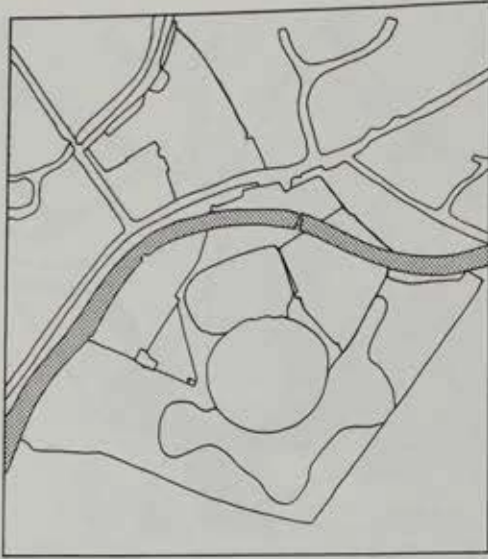
The Civil War defences on the western flank of the rampier have been obliterated in relatively recent times, with the exception of a short section of ditch below the terrace wall and Bothy. On the eastern flank of the rampier a large bank and ditch remain, forming the southern limit of the New House platform although the date of the bank in its present form is uncertain. This flank is still covered by trees. The other earthwork which may be of Civil War date is a large angular flat topped mound to the south-east of the New House. Early maps of the site indicate an angled corner bastion at this point but the surviving mound would appear to be much bigger and may have been enlarged by the addition of construction spoil from the Basingstoke Canal which disturbed this part of the site, and excavation spoil from Lord Bolton's work at the end of the 19th century.

These 17th century defences are in design unlike any other of the period in England and this makes them one of the nation's most impressive surviving monuments of the Civil War period (see cover photograph).

Basingstoke Canal

Bridge
DoE List No 22/51

The Basingstoke Canal was intended to form part of national waterway system between the Thames and the English and Bristol Channels, but in reality the canal never progressed beyond Basingstoke. Construction took place over several years, between 1788



and 1794. A short length of the canal (90m) survives more or less intact, albeit in a dry condition. The major remaining structure is a brick built bridge of unusual design dating from the 1790s. It is built not

only on a bend, but also running uphill (Fig 18). Beneath the arch, part of the tow path is still visible above the canal bed.

Basingstoke Common

To the south of Basing House today lies the rough pasture of Basingstoke Common. This name has only recently been applied to the area and until the early 1970s it was known as Basing Park. Writing at the turn of the century (1904, 82) Godwin stated: 'Beyond the moat to the south is an open space, still called the Park, as it was two centuries ago. Not long since two piers of fine brickwork stood at the former entrance, nearly opposite to which is a chalk pit, in which several skeletons have been discovered.' It is not clear where this particular quarry was located, as chalk pits are common in the area of the Park.

The early 18th century enclosure/tithe map (HRO 11M49 E/P 6) shows the park criss-crossed by avenues of trees, and surrounded by roads. The eastern boundary is the present day Park Lane, whilst the western boundary is now simply a footpath.



Fig 18 View, presumably late Victorian, showing the canal bridge from the west with Park Hill cottages in the background.

Chapter 3

Early Excavations

Canal building and early archaeological discoveries

As noted above, the construction of the Basingstoke Canal in the late 18th century considerably altered the landscape of the ruined Basing House estate. It is clear that the canal builders removed a substantial part of one wing of the New House, possibly including a main gatehouse. It is not surprising, therefore, that a number of discoveries were made during this work. There is, for example, a story that a local watchmaker found a hoard of '800 golden guineas' reputedly buried during the siege (Vine 1968, 48), although this is unlikely since guineas were not minted until 1663. This story probably grew from the fact that a hoard of late 16th-early 17th century shillings was discovered during the digging of the canal. These were displayed in Basingstoke Museum in its early days (S G Knight, pers comm), but their current location is not known.

Other finds must have been commonplace, and presumably the foundations of part of the New House were encountered. There is no written record of this, but other sources (Chandler 1827; Anon 1865, 213-6) do mention that 'in digging the canal . . . skeletons, cannon-balls, coins, &c., were found in great numbers'. It is possible that the skeletons came from the basement of a wing of the New House and that these were the poor unfortunates trapped during the onslaught and subsequent fire as reported by Hugh Peters (Adair 1981).

Other finds must have been made at the site in the past, but few are recorded. Godwin (1882) mentions the discovery of a 32lb cannon ball, possibly to the south of the Citadel. He also notes that to the south of the House, in the Park, a chalk pit near the former entrance was found to contain several skeletons. Skeletons and shot appear to have been the most regularly recorded finds in the village right up to the present day. Post-medieval pottery, musket balls and two skeletons were found during excavations on Cowdery's Down (Millett 1983). Other recent examples include two male skeletons from Apple Tree Cottage, Basing (Allen & Anderson 1990), and a female skeleton from the river bank at the Grange (Anderson, unpublished). The dating of all these finds is uncertain.

Excavations by Lord Bolton

The first known controlled excavations on the site of Basing House were initiated in the late 19th century by the then owner, Lord Bolton. They began before 1875 and continued until 1908 (Fig 19). A paper was communicated to the Society of Antiquaries in 1875 by G G Colleton Rennie (1876) describing the excavations to that date in both the Old and New Houses, and visitors to the site (Godwin 1882, 5-12; Warren 1907) recorded the progress of investigations at the time.

At the end of the excavation campaign a paper was delivered to the Society of Antiquaries by C R Peers (1909), summarising the history of the house and referring to the 'careful and systematic excavations carried on for a series of years by Lord Bolton'. It is unfortunate that this careful and systematic work was not continued to the report stage, although a detailed annotated plan was made of the excavated walls and a large number of photographs were taken (Moorhouse 1970). Legend has it that Lord Bolton lent all the excavation notes to a local society a few days before he died, and they were never returned.

From Peers' account it is clear that Lord Bolton's main intention was to uncover the plan of the house as it had been immediately before the Civil War destruction. The discovery of flint foundations beneath the 16th century brickwork in the south-western part of the Citadel was noted, and they were assigned to the medieval castle, but no attempt was made to uncover their full plan because they were too fragmentary. As the VCH stated, 'one piece of 12th century detail has been found . . . the voussoir of an arch, but this by itself cannot be taken as evidence of the character of the early buildings . . . a very clean sweep must have been made when the brick house was built' (1911, IV, 117).

One of the most detailed contemporary reports is to be found in an issue of the Court Journal (Bowdler Sharpe 1906) which includes the following 'For many years past Lord Bolton . . . has instituted a careful excavation of the ruins of Basing House, which has been performed under his directions in the most intelligent manner by one of his retainers, George Moss, two of whose ancestors took part in the defence of the house under the marquis of Winchester. . . . The excavations conducted by Lord Bolton during the last



Fig 19 Lord Bolton's excavations at Basing House c1902. View showing the inner end of the main gate passage and an unexcavated deposit of what appears to be garden soil, chalk and rubble at the centre of the Citadel.

five years are not yet completed, but great progress has been made with the exploration of the foundations of the Old House. Three years ago the area within the Citadel was entirely covered with a grassy mound, four feet in depth. This has now been removed, the position of the "loftie gatehouse" and its four turrets identified; fireplaces and ovens uncovered, some of them with the ashes still in them, as they were left when the House was surprised on that fatal 14th of October, 1645. In some of the lower cellars, lately brought to light by the custodian, Geo. Moss, have been found several rough drawings in charcoal on the plaster walls, evidently the work of prisoners. Certain representations of ships seem to indicate that a sailor must have amused himself in the prison, and a crude caricature of a cavalier (probably meant for the Marquis) gives the long hair and broad collar of the period.'

The hall undercroft and many of the cellars were emptied by Moss and his men. Peers mentions paintings on the plastered walls of the cellars on the south-east side of the first court, which may indeed have been made by Civil War prisoners. A further newspaper article of January 1910 reads 'The most sinister thing among the existing ruins is the prison - the dungeon in the midst of the garrison ... some who were imprisoned there drew charcoal sketches on the walls. One prisoner's grim joke was to draw a man

suspended from a gibbet, to represent either the fate he expected for himself or what he would do to his gaoler if he ever had the opportunity. These sketches were protected from the rain by the excavators by means of a piece of corrugated iron roofing, but in a heavy spring snowstorm some two years ago they almost disappeared. Great drifts filled the ruins, and when the snow melted the drawings were found to be smudged beyond recognition' (Willis Museum local history files). Warren (*op cit*) states that the sketches were of figures and ships.

Moorhouse (1970) cites a series of letters to Lord Bolton from Mr Wilson, his agent and director of excavations in his absence. These detail some of the areas being excavated. Two brick and flint-lined pits for example, excavated in 1903, were found to contain "broken crockery, glass, oyster shells, etc", and were back filled in 1907. Colleton Rennie mentions that the ditch near the postern gate contained large numbers of stone cannon balls. It would appear that the excavation process consisted mainly of rubble clearance from the walls and rooms. Large quantities of finds were collected, including architectural fragments, pottery, iron, glass, weaponry and shot, and most of the material was put on show in a museum on the site. The ruins were also displayed to visitors in exchange for 'a small fee', and local archaeological societies were regular visitors (Trans Newbury

Distr
1915
Ur
avail
den
rep
year
Hob
a ye
impo
phot
Mus
Ex
been
ditch
dest
were
the
tury
this
Coll
been
(187
T
tion
corr
Moo
of th
they
show
of th
main
plan
the a
ties
Exec
The
Basin
gatio
Powl
varie
logic
Not
Hurs
1971
ten
Anon
avail
Ther
Arch
Augu
Read
New
the in
Five
1964
period
repro

District Field Club 1889, Proc Hants Field Club 1915).

Unfortunately, no contextual information was available for these early finds, but it is likely that most derived from post-Civil War destruction layers and represent the objects in use in the house in its final years. Some of the pottery was discussed by R L Hobson in a paper read to the Society of Antiquaries a year later (1910). It includes notes on both the imported and the local wares, and is illustrated with photographs of complete vessels in the British Museum, plus a few fragments of pots from Basing.

Evidence of Lord Bolton's excavations may have been revealed in the more recent excavations of the ditch terminals. The large quantity of finds and destruction debris from these areas confirms that they were not cleared in the early dig, and the finds from the upper levels suggest that some of the 19th century spoil was dumped there. However, the bridge in this locality was uncovered during the Bolton dig, and Colleton Rennie noted that the ditch around it had been filled with 'all kinds of debris, including cinders' (1876, 462).

The few further details concerning these excavations, which have been gleaned from Lord Bolton's correspondence, have been adequately reported by Moorhouse (*op cit*). The contemporary descriptions of the work may fall short of modern standards, but they provide enough insight into the methods used to show that pre-Tudor levels of the Citadel and most of the New House were left untouched. Lord Bolton's main purpose appears to have been to uncover the plan of house of his ancestor Sir William Paulet, with the added benefit that he could collect some curiosities for his museum.

Excavations in the 1960s

The Search for Buried Gold

The archaeological investigations which took place at Basing House in the 1960s were mainly at the instigation of the then owner, the Hon Christopher Orde-Powlett. The documentation for these activities is varied. Some campaigns were reported in archaeological journals (eg Pike & Combley 1964; Combley, Notman & Pike 1968; Orde-Powlett 1966; Wilson & Hurst 1964, 1966; Hurst 1970; Moorhouse 1970, 1971), and excavations by Graham Miller were written up in privately printed booklets (Miller 1964, Anon 1967), but evidence for some of the work is available only through articles in the national press. There are also oblique references to a 'Basing House Archaeological Society' which made some finds in August 1966, and it is believed that someone from Reading University excavated at two locations by the New House (A Turton, pers comm). There was also the investigation of the foundations of a gateway at Five Ways Junction, by the Basingstoke Museum in 1964. A definitive plan of archaeological work at this period, based upon that of Moorhouse (1970), is reproduced in Fig 20.

It is apparent that casual finds from Basing House were unearthed throughout the first half of the 20th century, inspiring the curiosity of the resident family members. In 1962 press reports (*Southern Evening Echo* 3.3.1962) described how the Hon Orde-Powlett was to start excavation work that Spring with the help of the Aldermaston Archaeological Society. A Basing House guidebook of c1963 (Anon) describes the two-fold aims to 'further the interests of archaeology' and 'systematically dig for the ... treasure reputed to have been hidden by the 5th Marquis of Winchester in 1645.'

A few further insights into the treasure hunting excavations can be gleaned from contemporary newspaper cuttings. In *The Times* 1963 (30.5.1963) it is recorded that the younger son of Lord Bolton had applied to the Ministry of Works for permission to dig 'for gold'. The report also mentions a plan to begin the excavation in a section of canal bank and vaults of the house. By August, permission had apparently been granted. The *Southern Evening Echo* (9 August) printed a picture of two volunteers digging 'where metal was indicated by a machine', a site believed by Orde-Powlett to be that of the chapel crypt. Three days later the *Daily Herald* published a picture of the Orde-Powletts apparently digging inside the Citadel (although this may have been simply posed for the cameras, as no hole is visible). Although the emphasis is again on buried treasure, it was noted that cannon and musket balls and some stained glass were found. Work that year seems to have been held up by the fact that no qualified archaeologists were available to supervise the excavation, as reported in the *Daily Telegraph* (19 August). This did not stop some work from going ahead and another picture of work in progress was published by the *Illustrated London News* (24 August). In the *Hampshire Magazine* for September 1963, Emberton records that 'already a gang of men are engaged in digging a cross trench' in the area of the New House.

Basing House again made the local and national press in 1965. Both the *Sun* and *Southern Evening Echo* for April 4th reported that the search for gold was continuing with the help of Royal Engineers frogmen who were clearing a well of rubble. The *Basingstoke Review* of this period noted that four frogmen had removed nearly 4 tons of masonry bricks from the well, and quoted the owner as saying that if the well failed to produce the gold, he intended to continue the search in other parts of the castle.

In 1966, the *Daily Telegraph* printed an article, entitled 'Digging for Gold' (24 August), in which it is recorded that finds of Bronze Age, Roman, Saxon and Norman date as well as pottery, glass and weapons had been made. Six 'pieces of gold' were also found earlier that year. In 1967, according to the *Southern Evening Echo* (23 May), divers were back in the well and had discovered three 'tunnels' at its base. Further excavations in the New House in 1968 uncovered two Elizabethan coins, and one of Edward IV, as well as a medieval floor with a possible well at the centre, 'found near the site of the old drawbridge' (*Echo*, 27 August).

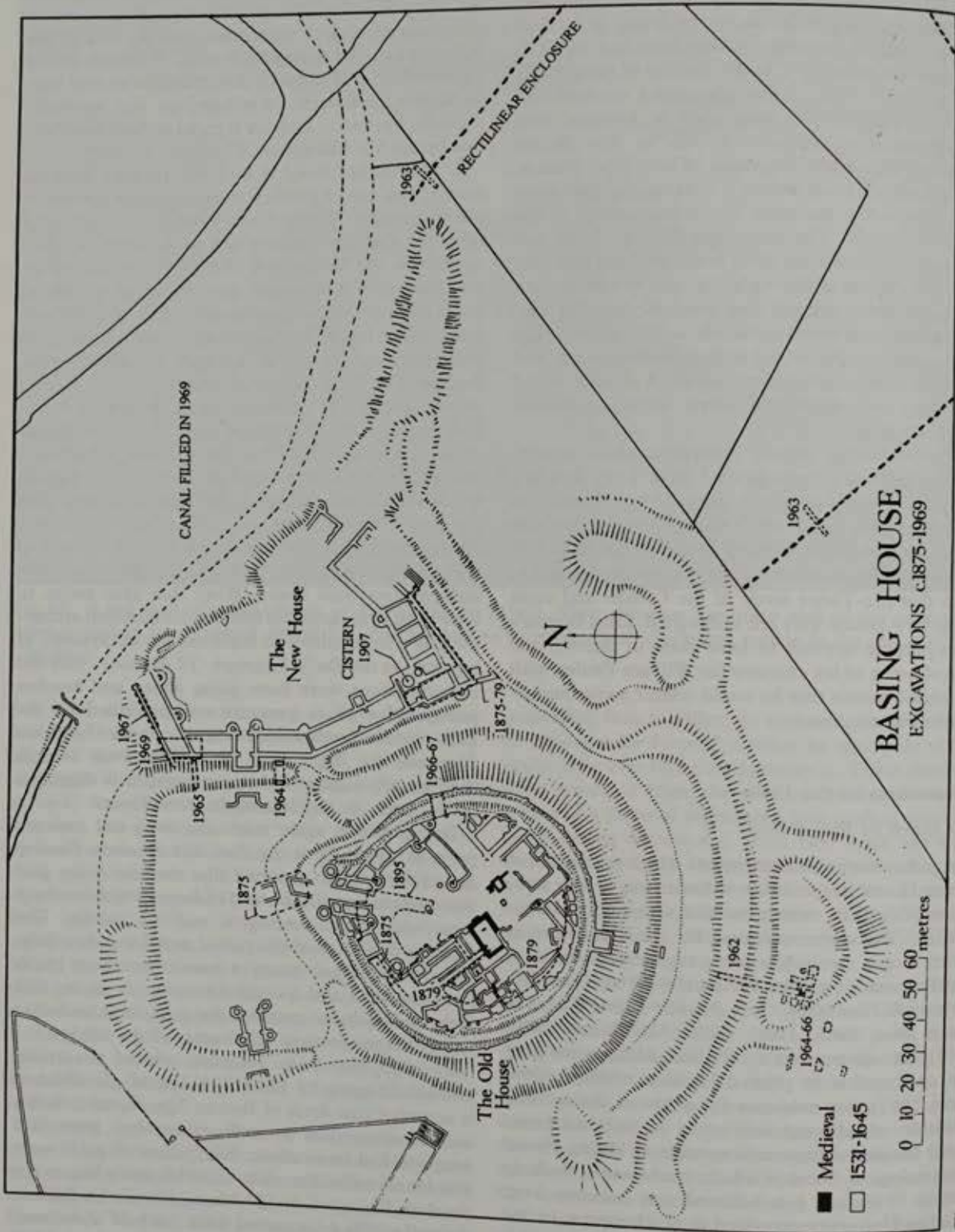


Fig 20 Plan of Basing House Excavations 1875-1969 - Based upon Moorhouse 1970, Fig 9.

In
ing 7
family
Turco
the o
one o
great
skeletal
the o
1962
vating
Hous

Outsi
Societ
More
of Ba
ried
Societ
betwe
Com
1964
throu
Citad
bastic
facts
the b
finds
Roma
the d
found
tile a
ing in
1962
pation
Roma
Me
fragm
the 1
deep,
appar
south
contar
In
excav
sure t
covere
excava
Two s
west s
a heig
been p
locality
that t
War,
althou
entran
house
stantia
finds, i
earthw

In 1940, the skeleton of a man reputedly measuring 7ft 3ins was found in the orchard by the Evans family, tenants of Basing House at that time (A Turton, pers comm). This find can be equated with the statement made by Hugh Peters (Adair 1981) that one of the garrison dead was measured 'and from his great toe to his crown was 9 feet in length'. Another skeleton was uncovered by Orde-Powlett's brother in the orchard prior to 1962 (*Southern Evening Echo* 3.3.1962), and notes exist of a skull 'dug up while excavating for a soakaway' in October 1965 (Basing House Archive).

Outside the Citadel - Aldermaston Archaeological Society Excavations

More methodical excavations on the southern fringes of Basing House and a nearby earthwork were carried out by the AWRE Aldermaston Archaeological Society under their Field Secretary R Combley between 1962 and 1966 (Pike & Combley 1964; Combley, Notman & Pike 1968; Wilson & Hurst 1964). As mentioned above, a 1962 trench was cut through the main outer ditch and bank south of the Citadel, continuing across the small semi-circular bastion. The upper layers contained Civil War artefacts and rubble, whilst the old ground surface below the bank consisted of a layer of dark soil containing finds of mainly Roman and medieval date. The Roman pottery was weathered and fragmentary but the date range was 1st to early 5th century. Four coins found were all 4th century types. Deposits of roofing tile and flue tile suggested the presence of 'a building in the near vicinity' and towards the end of the 1962 season, evidence also emerged of 'Belgic occupation, earlier than and distinct from that of the Romano-British period' (1964, 20).

Medieval activity was represented by two small fragments of thumb-rim ware tentatively dated to the 11th-12th century and a V-shaped ditch c4m deep, cutting through the dark layer. This feature was apparently infilled during the construction of the southern bastion. A thick ashy layer sealing the ditch contained 17th century and later finds.

In 1963 the Aldermaston Archaeological Society excavations concentrated on a large rectilinear enclosure to the east of the Citadel. This had been discovered by aerial photography, and the aim of the excavations was to establish a date for the feature. Two sections were cut, in the north-east and south-west sides at the western ends. The bank survived to a height of 0.3m in the north-east section but had been ploughed out to the south-west, although in this locality the ditch was over 2m deep. Finds showed that the enclosure was post-Norman and pre-Civil War, but any closer dating proved impossible, although the excavators suggested that the enclosure's entrance on the south-east side aligned with the gatehouse at Fiveways junction on Crown Lane. The substantial proportion of Iron Age and Romano-British finds, including coins, from the dig suggested that the earthworks cut earlier occupation layers.

The Aldermaston group returned in 1964-66 to continue investigating the area around the southern bastion. They carried out a magnetometer survey, and as a result, examined part of a ditch system. An earlier ditch, running north-south, had apparently been recut in part when a new ditch was dug on an east-west alignment to link with it. The upper layers of the later ditch contained residual Iron Age pottery and the primary silt contained animal bone.

The 1962 trench was enlarged in 1965-66 and a series of boxes was laid out to the south, which is still visible on the ground today. The Civil War bank was found to be of 'simple dump construction' and consisted of chalk rubble and flints. Sealed beneath the pre-1640s turf line was a layer of burnt flints and a chalk floor. Four postholes were identified cutting this layer, but their relationship with each other was uncertain. The finds from the floor included 4th century coarse wares, Roman tile and brick, animal bone and bones of two or more human infants. Three 4th century coins came from the brown soil above the floor. Beneath the floor was a sherd of samian ware and another buried turf layer, containing flint flakes. This in turn sealed two 'Belgic hut sites', which consisted of roughly circular depressions with gravel floors containing Iron Age pottery. A small east-west ditch, apparently running parallel with the Citadel ditch, cut the Roman and earlier layers, and its primary fill contained a 'Tudor tile'. It was sealed by the Civil War earthwork.

The New House Excavations

Published reports exist for a separate series of excavations which were also taking place in the 1960s, concentrating on the site of the New House. Graham Miller (a member of the Hampshire Field Club) dug a trench across the ditch at the south-eastern corner of the bailey to investigate two parallel lines of brickwork (Miller 1964; Wilson & Hurst 1966). He concluded that these were probably part of a bridge crossing from the New House to the Citadel bailey, and that the associated flat-bottomed ditch had cut an earlier ditch on the same alignment.

The earlier ditch had been cut into chalk subsoil and was filled with dark clay containing oyster shells and part of a medieval jug. The brickwork foundations on the west side had been constructed on this medieval layer, and Miller suggested that these alterations were part of William Paulet's rebuilding. The bridge had probably been dismantled after the Civil War. The primary fill of the later ditch contained a large quantity of nails, and two coins (James I and Charles II), which together with clay pipe evidence suggested to the excavator that the first layer took 30-60 years to accumulate.

Another section of the eastern bailey ditch was excavated in 1965 and parts of the north-west range of the New House were examined in 1967 and 1969 (information from Moorhouse 1970). According to a report in the *Sunday Telegraph* (9.8.1968) a cellar in the New House was also excavated in 1968, with a

EXCAVATIONS c.1875-1969
Plan of the New House Excavations 1875-1969. Based upon Moorhouse 1970, Fig 9.

0 10 20 30 40 50 60 metres

clay pipe containing 'a cavalier's last smoke' being unearthed. In 1969 Moorhouse excavated another undercroft in this area (Hurst 1970). This previously unknown feature was found to be cut into natural chalk and lined with brick walls 3-4 ft thick, the upper parts of which had been robbed. The backfill was identified as spoil from the canal digging, and contained pottery of 11th-18th century date, as well as clay pipes, glass, stone, metalwork and three coins. The work was to be continued in 1970. It was also in 1969 that the adjacent section of the Basingstoke Canal was filled in.

The Postern Gate Excavations

In March 1966 heavy rain led to the collapse of part of the eastern rampart of the ringwork. It had been thought that the perimeter of the Citadel consisted of two parallel lines of brickwork, the area between them being filled with rubble. When fallen debris had been cleared, however, an interior wall was revealed running diagonally between the two retaining walls.

In the Interim Report on Excavations at Basing House (Anon 1967, but the booklet is of similar style that produced by Miller) it is suggested that the brickwork of this wall formed the construction of the original rampart, built between 1530 and 1570. However, in Orde-Powlett's report to the CBA (Orde-Powlett 1966), the wall is described as plaster-faced, and most likely to be part of a medieval gateway. The line of the internal wall could be seen continuing as a flint wall running for 15ft outside the ramparts, nearly to the bottom of the ditch. Furthermore, the base of a parallel wall 13ft to the north was traced internally, projecting into the citadel; it was likely that this was the northern side of the gateway. Dating evidence from pottery finds suggested that the entrance had been filled in between 1600 and 1650, probably before the Civil War, but the wall blocking the outer end may have had a strengthening buttress added at the outbreak of hostilities.

Other finds from the rubble included pottery, animal bone and tile, some of the latter decorated with '13th century hunting scenes'. Several pieces of carved stonework were also recovered, probably from door or window mouldings. It also seemed that there was a small room, perhaps the ground floor of a building, built within and surmounting the ramparts.

Post-excavation work by Moorhouse

The excavations in the Citadel by Lord Bolton between c1875 and c1908 were published by Peers (1909), and some of the pottery was reported on by Hobson (1910), as mentioned above. The bulk of the finds, however, had to wait over sixty years before they were studied and published in detail by Stephen Moorhouse and Ian Goodall (Moorhouse 1970, 1971).

Moorhouse's report was divided in two for publication. Part One contains a brief history of the site and background to the excavations, and a fifty-page report on the ceramics, which provides a basic type series for the site. The pottery is divided into local (fine sandy white wares, 'Tudor Green' type, fine sandy red wares) and imported wares (Delft, German stonewares, porcelain, maiolica, and earthenware), as well as Delft tiles and horticultural pots. The material included in the present report should prove a useful addition to this type series.

Part Two includes the metalwork (domestic and structural ironwork, military equipment, firebacks, etc), worked bone, leather, wood, glass (vessel, bottle and window), and clay tobacco pipes. Worked stone, ceramic building material (other than Delft tiles), and environmental evidence are not included.

Unfortunately no contextual information was available for the finds, but it is likely that most of the material was deposited after the Civil War destruction of the site, even if most of it can be dated to the first half of the 17th century.

The E

Excavations
terminating
1978 to
and K
Museum
ditch
the brick
the loca
a Mar
vised
Depart
the dit
left un
on the
should
front w
Phase
not ful
Phase
left in
All f
23, so
ated. I
their cl
section
which
evant p
identifi
of the p
in the

Notes on
The ga
area of
opportu
detail is
out som
tered d
the char
themsel
The n
were, w
mative.

Chapter 4

The Citadel Gatehouse

(INCLUDING BOTH RINGWORK TERMINALS AND THE DITCH)

The Excavations

Excavations in the area of the gatehouse, ringwork terminals and ditch (Fig 21, Area 1) took place from 1978 to 1983, directed by R T Schadla-Hall (1978-81) and K J Barton (1982-83) for the Hampshire County Museums Service. Under Schadla-Hall's direction a ditch section was begun immediately to the west of the bridge, but was eventually abandoned because of the loose nature of the rubble fill. From 1980 to 1983 a Manpower Services Commission scheme, supervised by Kerry Wiggins for the HCC Recreation Department, attempted to clear the east terminal of the ditch of its post-Civil War infill, but this too was left unfinished. The limits of excavation are shown on the plan of the Phase IV gatehouse (Fig 22). It should be noted that to the north of the gatehouse front wall the lowest layer to be uncovered was the Phase VI cobbles, and the ringwork terminals were not fully excavated. In the remaining area, the pre-Phase I levels were reached except where walls were left *in situ*.

All features, regardless of phase, are shown in Fig 23, so that their spatial relationships can be appreciated. Detailed descriptions of features and layers and their chronological relationships can be found in the section on structural evidence. Feature numbers which appear in the report in bold appear on the relevant published phase plan or section. Those not so identified are to be found in the archive. Discussion of the phasing and function of features can be found in the interpretation section.

Notes on the Excavation Methods

The gatehouse is undoubtedly the most important area of Basing House to be excavated so far. The opportunity to study gatehouse development in such detail is rare indeed. It is therefore necessary to point out some of the problems which have been encountered during this final analysis so that readers have the chance to assess the reliability of the evidence for themselves.

The methods chosen for the excavation of this area were, with hindsight, not the most efficient nor informative. As the gatehouse was being excavated partly

for display purposes, the brick walls of the Tudor phase had to be left *in situ*. This in itself hindered interpretation of the earlier features. One major problem, however, was the decision to excavate the gatehouse in three sections (east, west and central), so that public access to the Citadel was not disrupted. This was accomplished in five seasons of 3-4 weeks duration, but was not helped by a change of directors and recording methods in the fourth year.

When excavations began in 1978, the west side of the gatehouse (GHW) was chosen as a starting point and partially cleared down to Civil War destruction layers. The following year, attention was turned to the east side of the gatehouse (GHE), where work continued through the next season. In 1981 the focus was on the gate passage (GHC), which was completed down to the Phase IIIa chalk roadway by the end of that season. The change of director took place in 1982, and work continued in the central area, taking it down to the natural subsoil. In 1983, the final season, the west gatehouse was completed, and parts of both ringwork terminals were also investigated.

The recording methods chosen by the two directors were very different and not compatible. The first regime used context numbers, but frequently the cut and fill of features were not distinguished, and there is little in the way of description or interpretation. It has proved impossible to produce a matrix for the site because the relationships of layers and features were not always recorded and few sections were drawn. Even with the help of the context sheets, it has been impossible to locate a few of the layers, and some which have been identified are by no means certain.

The later work was recorded using a daybook. Reading through this diary has enabled the interpretation of some of the planned features and layers, but many details have been lost. It is clear that much work, expense and heartache could have been avoided if a single (although apparently not infallible) system of contextual numbering had been adopted. The later system of layer numbers and feature names is not always consistent, and certainly does not match the descriptions on the plans and sections from the 1982-3 seasons. Some layer numbers which apparently existed, because finds have been collected from

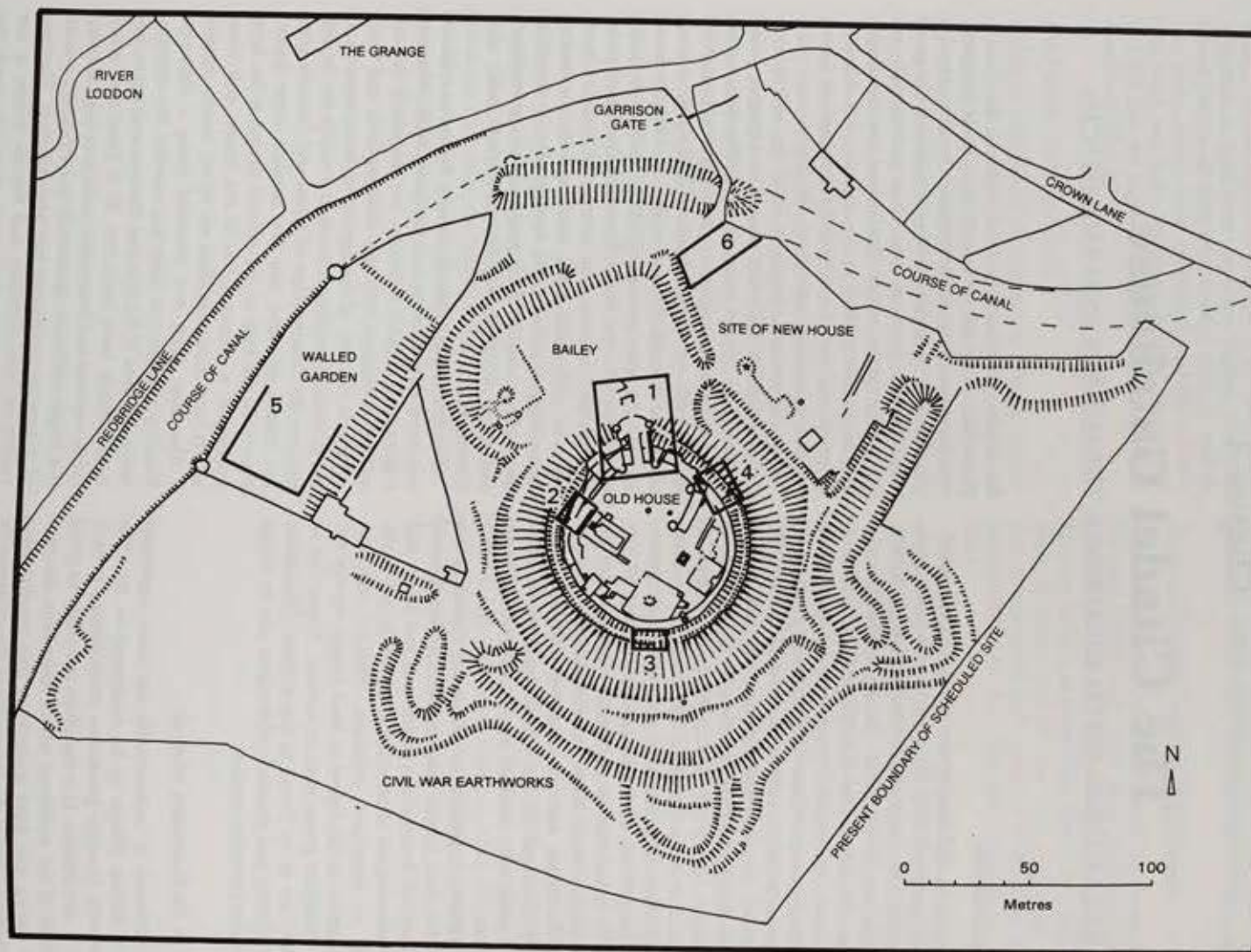


Fig 21 Basing House. Location of the recent excavations: 1 Citadel Gatehouse (1978-83) 2 Citadel Kitchen Area (1980) 3 South Bank (1988) 4 Postern Gate (1991) 5 Walled Garden (1982 and 1987-8) 6 The New House North-west range (1990). Based upon Ordnance Survey material with the permission of the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office, © Crown Copyright License No MC88308M0001.

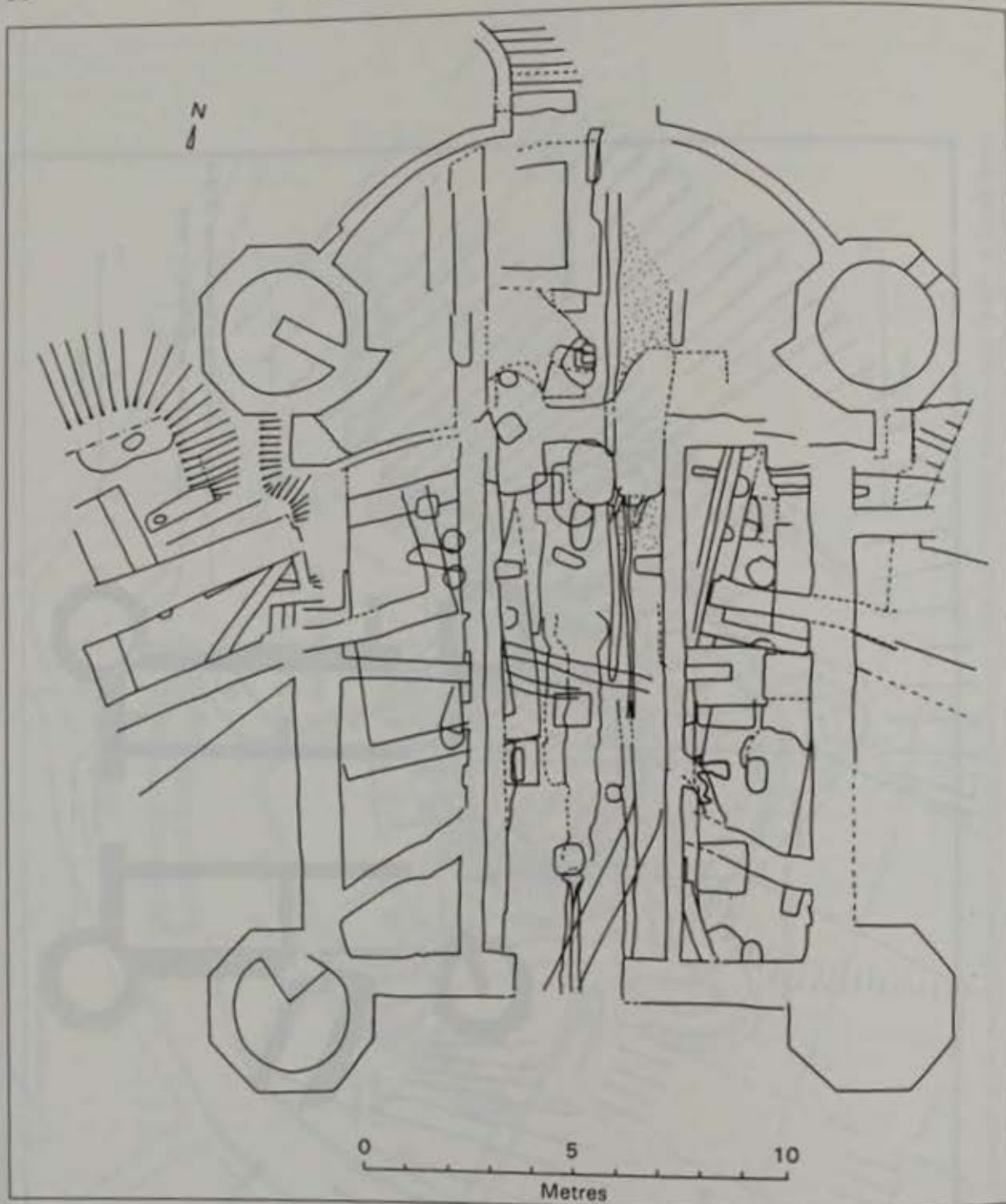


Fig 23 Citadel Gatehouse – All Features.

them, are not described in the day book, effectively removing their provenance and significance.

The excavation and recording methods used have caused problems at all stages of post-excavation analysis. The absence of a matrix has made phasing difficult and probably inaccurate, and dating of parts of the site cannot be definitive because primary contexts in the features are not identifiable. The stratigraphical relationships of some of the walls are far from clear, and it has proved almost impossible

to link surfaces from each of the three areas. Since many of the interpretations, reconstructions and conclusions concerning the gatehouse have to be based on the above evidence, the significance of this exercise, and therefore the site, has been somewhat reduced.

To add further to the difficulties, a number of potentially useful section drawings could not be located on the plans owing to a lack of coordinates and contextual information. The change of grid

between 1981 and 1982 was a relatively minor difficulty, once it had been noticed.

Although it is obvious that the site analysis has been made infinitely more difficult than necessary, the phasing and reconstruction that follow have been produced with a fair degree of confidence. This is because the general stratigraphy is reasonably well recorded, despite the fact that detailed relationships of contexts are by no means certain. It is true that the medieval features have been harder to reconstruct, but this is largely due to the loss of major areas of the site under later walls or by later destruction, rather than the failings of excavation technique. The problems involving the phasing of the flint-lined pit and its relationship with the path and large rectangular building assigned to Phase II, for example, are not attributable to the recording methods employed.

Context numbers from the 1978-81 excavations (1-572) have been used and identified with features and layers seen on the plans and in photographs wherever possible. Those contexts which apparently were not allocated a number during excavation have been given a number in the 600 series.

The 1982-3 features and layers were more difficult to assess, as they were not given numbers at the time. Context numbers were first assigned to features on plans and sections, and then an attempt was made to reconcile them with descriptions in the day book. This seems to have been fairly successful. The 1982 contexts are in the 600 and 700 series, and the 1983 contexts in the 900 series. These are the numbers used throughout the report.

In the 1978-81 series, 1-180 and 350-572 refer to the gatehouse, although some numbers refer to the West Ditch excavation (66, 67, 70, 83-5, 140, 154-6, 161-3, 169). Numbers 400-416 also refer to the West Ditch, whilst 451-463 refer to the East Ditch. In 1982 the East Ditch and part of the East Ringwork terminal were assigned the numbers 0501-0531, although two contexts were part of the gatehouse area (0511-12). The contemporary excavations in the Citadel Kitchen area (see Chapter 6) used the context numbers 300-331.

Phasing the Gatehouse

As far as possible, all contexts have been phased by their stratigraphical relationships. This was difficult for the 1982-83 excavations, owing to the problems outlined above. The site photographs were invaluable in this process, however, and their use in conjunction with plans and sections has helped to iron out some of the discrepancies.

Nevertheless, some of the 1982-83 layer numbers, particularly at the north end of the site and in the rampart areas, were difficult to assign to phases. It was not until the pottery had been dated, that it became clear that some of these contexts had been wrongly placed, and a reassessment of the two ringwork terminal excavations proved necessary.

Although almost every context in the gatehouse area is now assigned to a chronological phase, it will

be seen from the phase descriptions and the finds reports that some of the attributions are vague, particularly post-Phase V. Most of the contexts from this period on, however, relate to the post-Civil War destruction of the site and its later beautification, and much of the material present in them is re-deposited or residual. The preceding features and walls have been assigned to more concrete phases, and these form the main evidence for a basic reconstruction of the site.

Gatehouse - Structural Evidence by Phase

Pre-Phase I - Pre-Medieval

No features could be assigned to the period predating the construction of the first gatehouse, but the lowest layer excavated was found to contain worked flint of Mesolithic and Bronze Age character, and coarse pottery of Iron Age, Romano-British and Saxon date. This layer consisted of a dark brown clayey soil which extended across the whole area excavated. It lay directly on the subsoil of orange clay with flints, which in this locality capped the natural chalk. On the west side, the brown and orange clay were mixed in places (907), and to the north an oval hump of orange clay (939) lay above the dark brown soil.

Contexts:	Dark brown layer	383, 393, 751, 761, 765, 766, 908, 931, 971.
	Orange hump, etc	907, 939.
	Subsoil & Natural	388, 634, 635, 636, 932.
Finds:	Pottery	393 (Med), 761 (RB, Med), 971 (RB-PMed).
	CBM	971 (RB, Med).
	Stone	761, 971.
	Plaster, etc	971.
	Cu Alloy	761.
	Flint	971 (Meso).
	Environmental	761, 971.

Phase Ia - Early Medieval (13th century)

(Fig 24)

A number of pits and postholes cut the layer above the dark brown soil in the area of the Phase IV gatehouse passage. This layer was a rough chalk and flint surface (736) apparently not covering the whole passageway area. To the east, the dark brown soil was overlain by compacted chalk (354, 365, 368, 390, 391), and this was cut by similar features.

Two large square postholes were excavated in both areas, those to the east (361, 364; Fig 25) being slightly larger (min 1.15 x 1.20m, 0.7m deep) than those in the central area (730, 731, min 0.7 x 0.7m, 0.4m deep; Fig 26). They all contained chalk and clay fill with flint packing, and post shadows were visible in 361 (386) and 364 (385). A natural gully (721) with sides of chalk and flint, cut through the gap between the two western holes and continued north, where it deepened to 0.3m. There was no noticeable silting in this feature, but at its lowest level it was filled with broken roof tile mixed with dark brown clay. There may also have been a gully running between the eastern postholes (363), containing a clay, pea grit and flint fill, but the evidence for this is less substantial. There was, however, a small irregular feature running east-west between the two eastern postholes (372, 373), which contained tile, brick and greensand fragments, where it ran under the Phase IV wall.

A number of other pits and/or postholes were also identified. Two large overlapping pits (758, 759) were found cutting the dark brown soil at the northern end of the gate passage. Their edges were buried by spoil from a gully (721 or 746?). Both pits measured c1.0 x 1.5m; 758 containing a brown sandy soil, 759 containing chalk. Further to the north another small posthole (747) was apparently cut in half by a later flint walled pit. On the east side, three features were located near the northern end of the Phase IV building. Two (378, 384) were almost circular, and measured approximately 0.7m in diameter and 0.3m deep (no details of fill available).

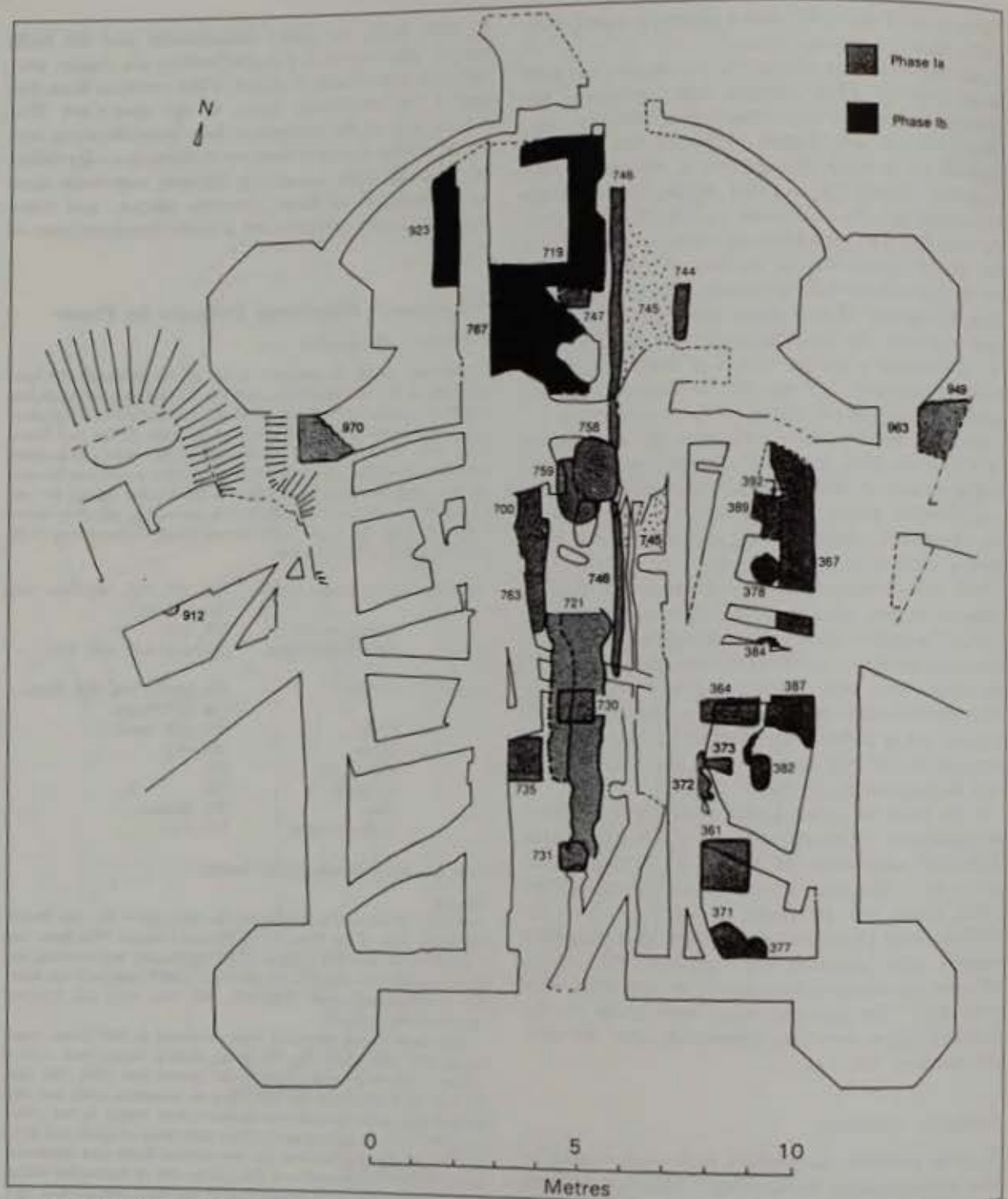


Fig 24 Citadel Gatehouse Phase I.

The third (389) was difficult to detect due to disturbance by later wall construction, but appeared to have one right-angled corner, and was lined with large flints (392). A small oval pit (382, 0.85 x 0.50m, 0.24m deep) was found approximately central to the eastern large postholes, and a similar shallow pit may have been present on the west side (appearing on photographs). Yet another (377) containing brown clayey soil was found to the south of 382. It cut a larger pit (371, 0.5m wide), of similar appearance to the large pits at the north-west end (758 and 759) but filled with loose gravel, clay and flints, with bricks at the base (probably related to the wall foundations of Phase IV, which cut it).

A number of linear features were excavated at the lowest levels

(359, 367, 387, 394, 700, 763, 735). They consisted of large flints laid on chalk blocks in trenches running along either side of the entrance passage on a north-south alignment (359 also contained greensand and may belong to a different phase). A chalk bank (380) seen in section below one of the Phase III walls may be related to these features. Large flints uncovered in other areas to the north of the Phase IV West Gatehouse (767, 970) may also belong to this phase, but later disturbance has confused this relationship.

Finally, a path made up of small pebbles (745), delineated by shallow gullies on either flank (744, 746), ran from the outer ditch to the centre of the two large postholes at the northern side, where it appears to have ended. It was just over 1m wide.



Fig 25 Citadel Gatehouse east viewed from above, showing the Phase Ia gatetower postholes 361 and 364 during excavation. Scale 1m.



Fig 26 Citadel Gatehouse centre viewed from the north-west, showing the Phase Ia gatetower postholes 730 and 731 at a late stage in excavation. Scale 2m.



Fig 27 The Phase Ib flint-lined pit viewed from the north. Scale 2m.

Contexts:	Large Square Postholes	361/386, 364/385, 730, 731, 359, 367, (380), 387, 394, 700, 735?, 763.
	Flint-lined trenches	
	Pits/Postholes	371, 377, 378, 382, 384, 389/392?, 747, 758, 759.
	Path and gullies	744, 745, 746.
	Layers/surfaces	354, 365, 368, 374, 381, 390/393, 736, 760, 762.
	Gullies, etc	363?, 372, 373, 721.
	Other features	369, 370, 764.
Finds:	Pottery (Med)	361, 364, 371, 372, 373, 374, 378, 746 (LMed), 747.
	Iron	363, 372, 374.
	Cu Alloy	746
	Environmental	361, 363, 364, 371, 372, 374, 378.

Phase Ib - Early Medieval to Medieval

(Fig 24)

A large, rectangular flint-lined pit was constructed next to the Phase Ia path near the lip of the ditch (Fig 27). It was cut into the natural

chalk at a slightly higher level than the path, and apparently deliberately avoided it. The pit measured 4.1 × 3.6m externally and 2.7 × 2.5m internally, with a depth of c3m. The walls and lining were of large evenly shaped flints (719, 923).

To the south of the pit, an area of large flints and chalk was uncovered, which had been deposited as four or more alternating layers (767). This deposit had been badly disturbed by later features and some of the pits in the immediate area may pre-date it. It appeared to underlie the western entrance wall of the Phase IV gatehouse, but due to later disturbances, its relationship with the flint-lined pit could not be clarified.

Contexts:	Flint-lined pit	719, 923.
	Flint/chalk deposit	(748, 749, 752?), 767.

Phase II - Medieval

(Fig 28)

On the west side of the gateway the walls and footings of a quadrilateral building (734, 743?, 927, 938) were set into the dark brown soil. This structure measured 6.36 × c4.9m externally and 5.1 × 3.6m internally. The walls consisted of massive chalk blocks with flint coursing (Fig 29), and footings of mortared flint. The floor

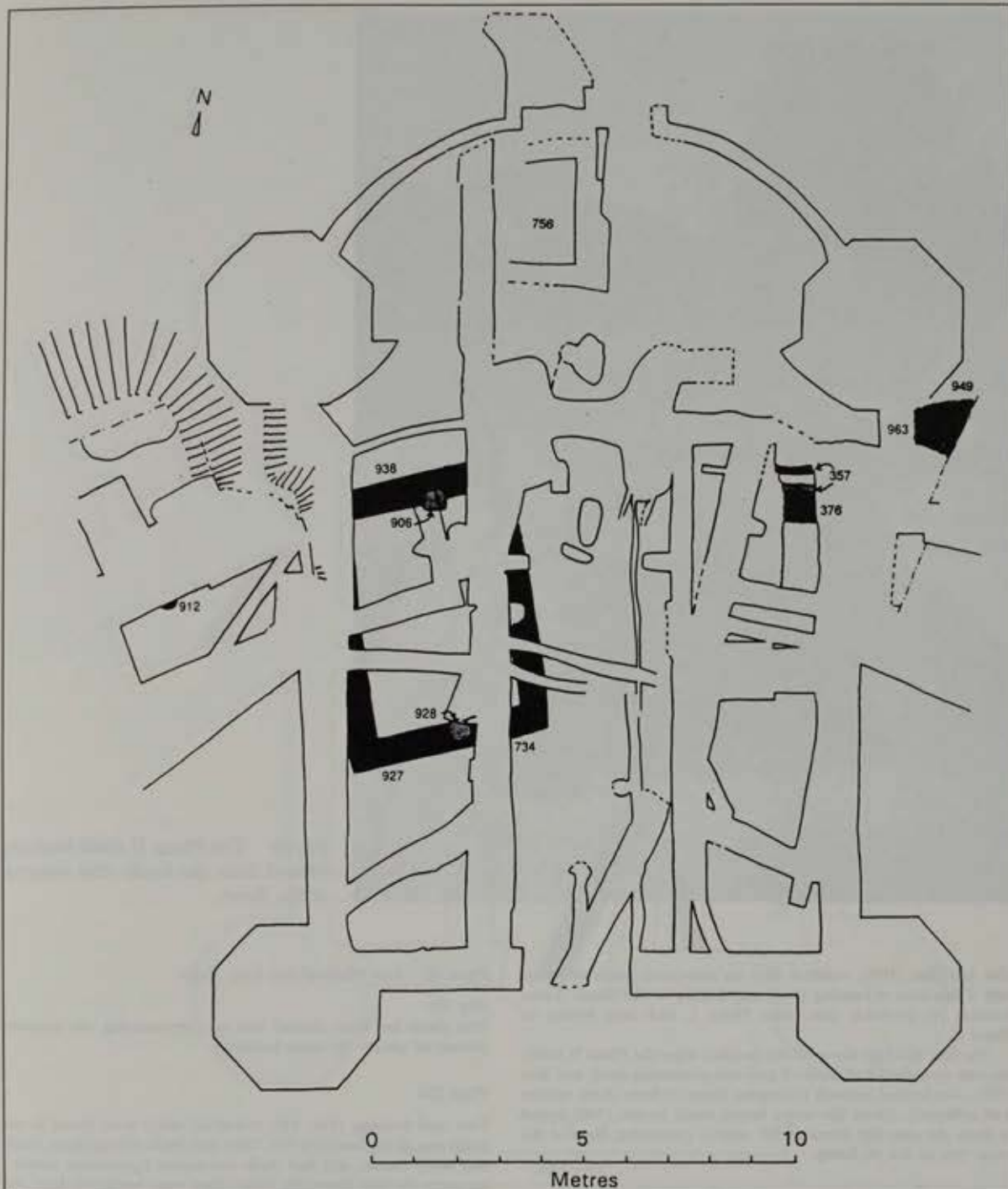


Fig 28 Citadel Gatehouse Phase II.

(903) was composed of compacted chalk, overlain by a thin layer of grey silt and a substantial layer of loose chalk containing roof tile fragments. The east wall consisted of similar large flints to those of the Phase I linear features, which it cut. Postholes (906, 928, 0.6m diameter, grey soil fill) cut each end wall internally, and may have cut the layer above the upper chalk fill. To the south of the building a strip of chalk (933-934) ran along the east side of the Phase IV room.

The Phase I gully (721) appears to have been in-filled during this phase, with layers of grey clay (727, 729) and chalky clay (728). Its western edge was not well-defined, however, and there seemed

to be another parallel cut here filled with flint and tile (733), possibly part of a later resurfacing. The lower layers of the Phase III surface may actually be part of the Phase II roadway. This surface is present on the east side as 129, 362 and 160.

On the eastern side it has been difficult to assign features to this phase. A cut through the Phase I flint feature (367) contained mortar and clay (376), and a feature to the north of it (357), consisted of two parallel strips of puddled clay running east-west either side of packed flint, with a greensand ashlar block at the west end. Mortar (370) was also present alongside 367 and the Phase IIIb drain head. A small oval area of clay, a laid surface of end-on



Fig 29 The Phase II chalk building viewed from the south after removal of the floor.

tiles and flint (355), together with an associated patch of gravel with a thin area of burning (356) may belong to this phase. These features are probably later than Phase I, and may belong to Phase II.

The flint-lined pit was probably in-filled when the Phase II building was constructed. A layer of grey soil containing daub and flint (769), was located beneath a compact dump of flints (from eastern wall collapse?). Above this was a brown sandy mortar (756) tipped in from the east (tip layers at 30° angle), containing flints of the same type as the pit lining.

Contexts:	Building	734, 743?, 903, 927, 938.
	Postholes	906, 928.
	Pit fill	756, 769.
	Gully fill	727, 728, 729.
	Other features	355, 356, 357, 370, 376.
	Surfaces	129, 160, 362, 933, 934.
Finds:	Pottery (Med-LMed)	129, 160, 376, 756 (PMed), 769 (RB), 903.
	CBM	756 (RB).
	Stone	756.
	Plaster, etc	769.
	Iron	129, 160, 356, 362, 756, 769.
	Cu Alloy	756.
	Lead	756.
	Environmental	129, 160, 362.

Phase III – Late Medieval and Early Tudor

(Fig 30)

This phase has been divided into two, representing two apparent periods of use for the same buildings.

Phase IIIa

Two wall footings (144, 147, 0.4–0.5m wide) were found in the north-east of the area (Fig 31). They were built of large flints, chalk, and sandy mortar, and had chalk and mortar foundations containing some tile and flint (352, 379). They were bedded in grey clay (164, 366) which sealed the Phase II surfaces in this area. One wall (147) runs above a chalk bank (380) which probably belongs to Phase I, and contained re-used dressed limestone. The other (144) had three holes cut into its outer edge.

A small length of flint wall (358) abutted wall 144, and a fragment of flint and chalk wall (176) appears to continue this alignment. A foundation or robber trench (filled with clay, chalk, bricks and flints) ran roughly parallel to the east (133, 174, 0.5m wide?). The distance between wall footing and trench was approximately 2.5m. The remains of wall 176 cut the grey clay layer (141), but the floor surface, in the southern end at least, appeared to be made of chalk and flint (135b, and possibly 129).

On the west side, a wall footing (541, 543) was cut by Phase IV and later features. It was composed of flint, greensand and mortar on a chalk foundation. A fragment of flint cross-wall (900) on a chalk foundation (901) was also noted. A small fragment of wall

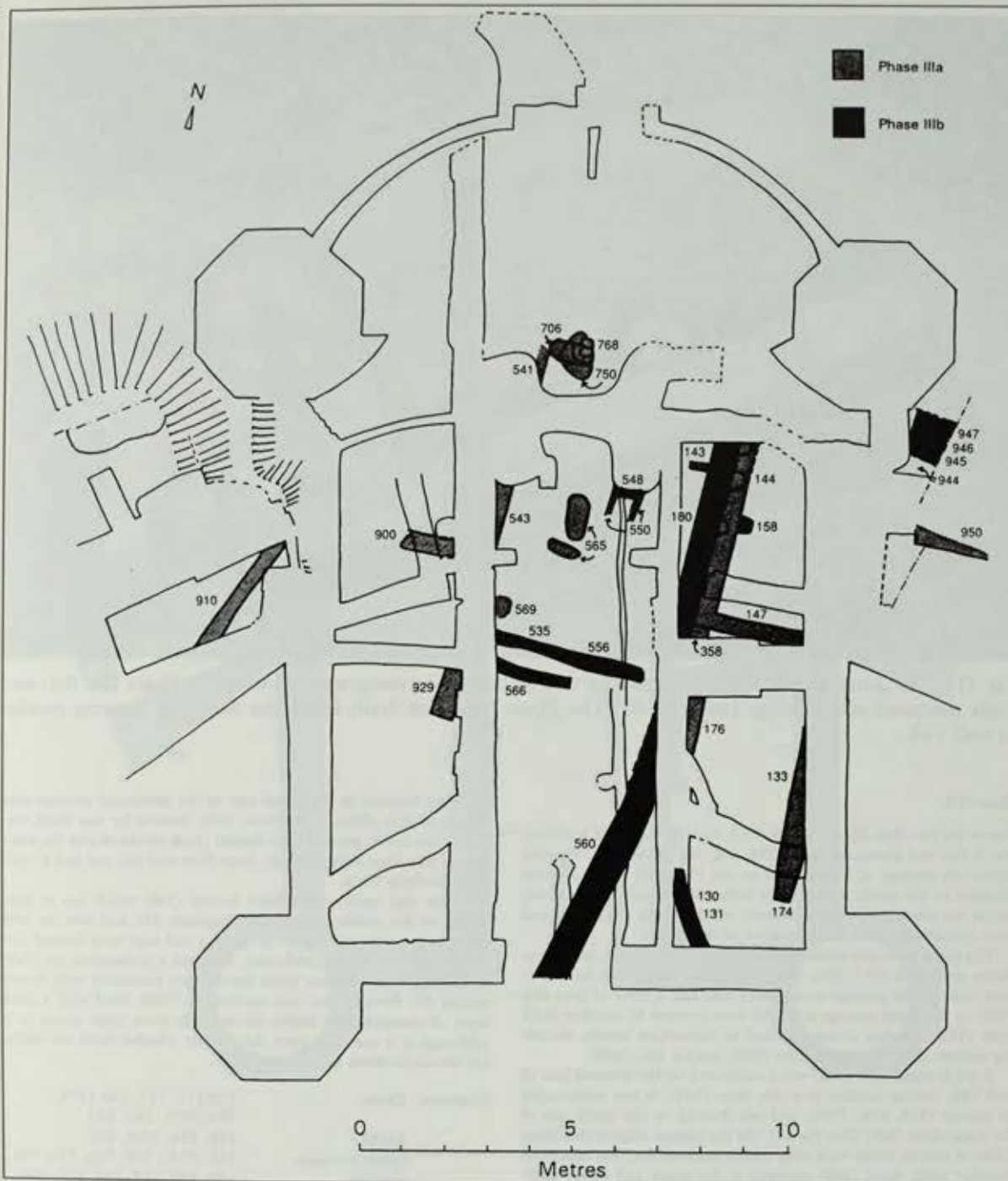


Fig 30 Citadel Gatehouse Phase III.

also survived in the southern area (929, 0.48m wide), made of flint, with a string course of tiles.

At least two surfaces in the gatehouse passage appear to belong to this phase. Above the Phase II flint and chalk, was a layer of loose flint and tile rubble (726, 733, 737, 738, 741) covered by a thick layer of chalk (542, 739, 740, up to 120mm thick). The chalk was cut by a number of irregular gullies (609-612), a posthole (569), two oval pits 15-18cm deep (565), and two small flint-filled features (613, 614).

Contexts:	East building	133, 144, 147, 174, 176, 352, 358, 379.
	West building	541, 543, 900, 901, 929
	Passage	542, 726, 733, 737-741.

Features	565, 569, 609-614.
Surfaces	129?, 135b, 141.

Finds:	Pottery	135 (Sax-PMed), 141 (LMed), 352 (LMed), 542 (LMed-PMed), 726 (PMed?).
	CBM	542.
	Plaster, etc	147, 176.
	Glass	352.
	Clay Pipe	542 (surface?).
	Iron	134, 135, 141, 352, 542, 726.
	Cu Alloy	141, 133, 352, 542.
	Environmental	133, 135, 141, 176, 352, 541, 542, 565, 569.

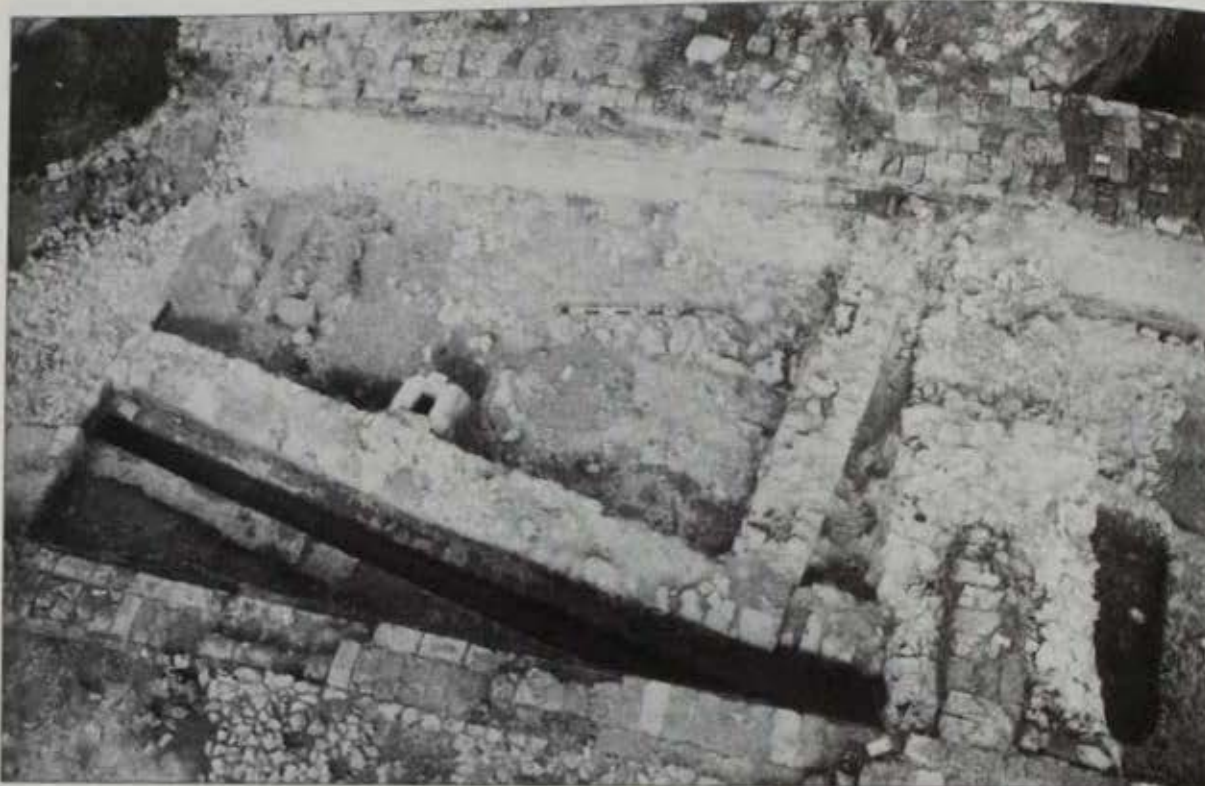


Fig 31 The north end of the east gatehouse viewed from the passageway, showing the Phase IIIa flint and chalk mortared wall footings 144 and 147. The Phase IIIb brick drain 180 is the dark strip running parallel to wall 144.

Phase IIIb

Above the two flint-filled features (613, 614) in the chalk roadway, was a flint and greensand kerb (535, 556, 0.2-0.5m wide) running across the passage at right-angles to the Phase III walls. A short distance to the south was a brick kerb (566) which ran half-way across the passage. Both sat directly on the chalk (542, etc) and were constructed after the formation of the gullies.

The kerbs were surrounded by layers of rubble, gravel, brick fragments and chalk (557, 558, 561, 563, 564), which may have covered most of the passage area. There was also a layer of grey clay (538) in the north passage area. All were covered by another chalk layer (537). Patches of construction or demolition debris, including mortar (549) and brick dust (539) overlay this chalk.

A brick drain head (158) was constructed on the internal face of wall 144, cutting another grey clay layer (164). It was surrounded by mortar (375, 376, 370?), and ran through to the north end of the main drain (180) (See Fig 31). On the eastern edge of this drain a line of mortar c4cm wide with timber impressions, was observed. Another brick drain (560) emerged at the south end of the gateway, cut chalk 542, and ran at right-angles to align with 180. At the northern end, beneath the Phase IV wall, the bricks covered the drain, and there were traces of a timber lining. The floor of the drain was made of 9 inch bricks laid side by side, and the feature was three courses deep. On its south-eastern side, a packed chalk and flint surface (572) had apparently replaced the chalk roadway. Another brick drain (130, 131) may have joined 560 below the Phase IV walls. It seems to have cut a surface of compact tile, brick and pebbles (351), which also appears in the north-eastern area (353) underlying the grey clay 164. One of the layers on the west side may correspond to this, consisting of fine khaki loam, daub, tile and limestone fragments (902).

The drain in the gatehouse passage was sealed by a pebble surface with fragments of brick (536, and probably 177). The drains in the north-eastern area were covered with chalk (150, 139) and clay and chalk (159). A partially brick-lined drainage gully (143) ran through this chalk at right-angles to drain 180, and at a higher level.

Some features at the north end of the gatehouse passage may belong to this phase. A posthole (548) flanked by two short tile-lined slots (550), packed with shaped chalk blocks shares the same axis. It was filled with silty clay, large flints and tile, and had a chalk base overlying flints.

A tile and brick rubble filled feature (706) which ran at right angles to the north-western wall fragment 541 and met up with some large greensand blocks at the east end may have formed part of the entrance to the gatehouse. This cut a rectangular pit (768) containing a line of four stone blocks (not mortared) with brown mortar fill. Beneath this was another pit (750) filled with a thick layer of orange-yellow friable mortar with three large stones in it (although it is not clear from the records whether these are different stones to those in the pit above).

Contexts:	Drains	130/131, 143, 158 (375, 370/376?), 180, 560.
	Kerbs	535, 556, 558?, 566.
	Other Features	548 (553), 550, 706, 750, 768.
	Surfaces	139, 150, 159, 164, 177, 351, 353, 536, 537, 538, 539, 544, 549, 557, 561, 563, 564, 572, 742, 902.
Finds:	Pottery (Med-PMed)	139, 143 (RB), 164, 375, 557, 561, 902.
	CBM	143 (PMed?), 902.
	Stone	351, 550.
	Slate	150, 557.
	Plaster, etc	139, 143, 557, 563.
	Glass	164, 561, 902.
	Iron	139, 143, 150, 159, 164, 180, 351, 550, 557, 561, 563, 902.
	Cu Alloy	130, 351, 902.
	Lead	130, 557, 561, 902.
	Environmental	139, 143, 150, 159, 164, 177, 351, 353, 557, 558, 561, 563.

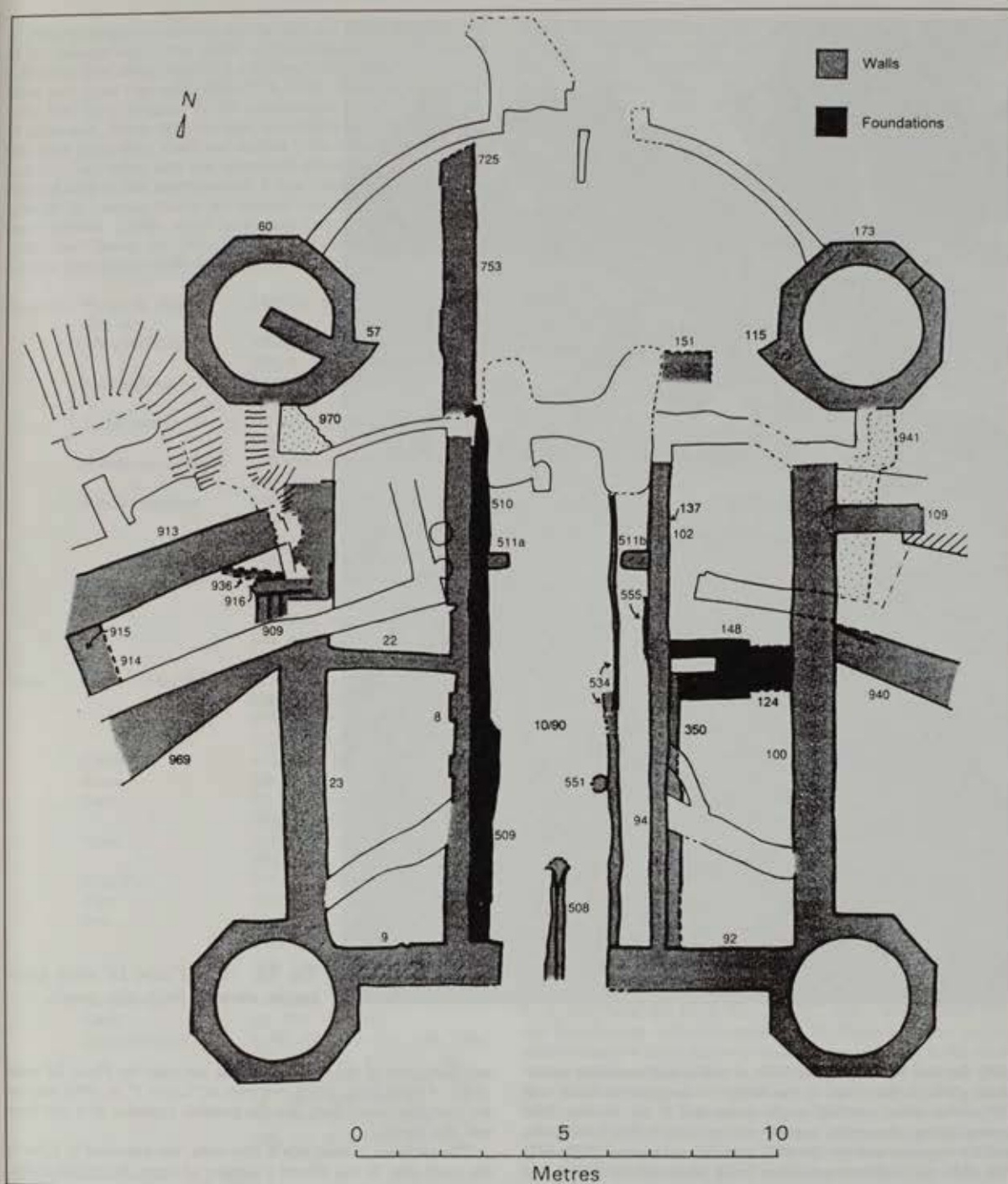


Fig 32 Citadel Gatehouse Phase IV.

Phase IV - 16th century (Tudor)

(Fig 32)

The substantial brick drains built in Phase IIIb were apparently filled in during the construction of the Phase IV gatehouse. The fill of 560 consisted of silty clay (567) and dark humic earth (571, beneath the Phase IV wall). A sandy loam surface (128), containing brick and flint, filled 130/131 and covered most of the south-eastern area. Drain 130/131 was filled with mortar where it ran below wall 94/102.

The main gatehouse walls were all of brick, generally laid as English bond. The west gatehouse had a thick outer wall (23, 0.9m

thick), a narrow inner wall (8, 0.35-0.5m wide with alcoves on the inner face) and a thick south wall (9, 0.98m wide). A narrow internal cross wall (22, 0.45m wide) had chalk and flint footings (27, 930?). The internal rooms were 2.9m wide, and the south room was 6.5m in length (Fig 33).

The main walls of the east building (100, 94/102, 92) were of similar dimensions, but the cross wall survived only as footings of chalk (148, 1.05-1.38m wide), and brick. The north walls of both sides were missing, but a fragment of chalk block footing with brick (151) survived to the east. Small buttresses (57, 115) extending from the north towers (60, 173) must mark the original position of the north walls. The wall footings (510) and foundation trench



Fig 33 The Phase IV west gatehouse viewed from the south.

(509) for wall 8 were shutter-built of chalk, and extended northwards (753, 0.74m wide) to the bridge. A fragment of brick wall (725, 0.7m wide) survived at the north end of this footing. The corresponding area to the east was not excavated. The footings for wall 8's opposite number (94/102) were less substantial (137, 142, 350, 555), the foundation trenches being filled with chalk and clay with flints. The foundation trench for wall 92 (132) contained chalk, flint, brick and stone. A deposit of heavy flint nodules (970) at the north end of wall 23 may mark the foundations for this wall.

The north towers were octagonal in shape on round footings with one small radial wall (922, north-west tower). The walls were 0.5m thick, and the diameter of the towers was 3.9m externally, 2.8m internally. The foundation trench was extensive on the east side (c1m wide), but was not present to the south, where the tower was built against subsoil and earlier layers. The upper layers of the trench were filled with yellow-grey mortar, flint, tile and brick (925), and the lower layer was of trodden chalk with tile and mortar (926).

The floor surfaces belonging to this phase are difficult to identify. The most likely layers on the east side are of chalk and flint (125/166?), or sandy loam (127). The latter certainly seems to have filled the space between the southern walls of Phase III. The large flint nodules in rammed chalk (124 and 145/146, with a thin layer of clay, 134a, in between), which overlay the large chalk footing 148,

may form part of the floor, extending out over the Phase III walls (360). A chalk layer which was part of "Layer 1" in 1983 may be the west gatehouse floor, but the possible presence of a cob floor was also noted.

The entrance passage was 4.25m wide, but narrowed to 2.5m at the south gate. It was altered a number of times during this phase. Above the pebble surface of the preceding phase, a mixed layer of dark brown clay (516/518), brick, mortar, flint and chalk rubble (1757, 533, 544, 545) had been deposited. This was cut by at least one gully (534, 0.2-0.35m wide). Above this, layers 516, 518 were mixed with rutted compact chalk (504) and cut by gullies (508, 513, 515, 520, 5257, 602, 6037, 6042, 605), small postholes (551, 0.4m diameter, 0.2m deep; 524, 0.23m diameter), and a rectangular feature containing a greensand block and rubble (512), and which overlay the wall footings for wall 94/102. This chalk appears to have been resurfaced by a fairly smooth layer of chalk (502) and another layer of rubble in a clay matrix (506). The gullies, some of which were V-shaped, contained clay and rubble (526, 527, 528). A large area of burning (507, 7057) in the northern part of the passage lay above this chalk (with a layer of yellow sticky clay beneath it, 531) and filled some of the gullies cutting it (eg 529), and a rectangular area of charcoal (505) in the north-west area may be related to this.

Two rectangular postholes cut through the chalk on either side of the passage way at the centre of the northern area (511a, 0.43 x 0.6m, 0.22m deep; 511b, 0.4 x 0.65m, 0.35m deep). They were filled with loose clay and rubble (521, 517). These layers and features have been assigned to the construction period of the Phase IV gatehouse. Above them a mixed layer which included sand, mortar, brick dust, flint, chalk and rubble (396-399, 500, 501, 503) had been deposited, and was apparently sealed by a layer of loose soil and broken flint approximately 7.5cm thick (24, 395). The top layer of the passage (below the topsoil) consisted of medium and small cobbles (10/90) which continued into the inner courtyard within the Citadel (93, 951). There were signs of wear in these cobbles presumably caused by wheeled vehicles.

Contexts:	Phase III feature fills, etc	133/174, 552, 567, 571.
	West building	8/509/510/519/703/722/725/753/755, 9, 22/27/930, 23/970?
	East building	92/132, 94/102/137/142/350/555, 100, 148, 151.
	North towers	57, 60, 115, 173, 922, 925, 926.
	Gatehouse surfaces	124/134a/145/146, 125?, 127?, 128, 166, 360.
	Passage surfaces	10/90/93/951, 24, 175, 395-399, 500-504, 506-507, 516/518, 531, 532, 533, 544, 545, 601?, 606-608, 705, 720?
	Passage features	505, 508 (527), 511a/b (521, 517), 512, 513, (526), 515(528), 520, 524, 525, 529, 534, 551, 602-605.
Findings:	Pottery (Med-PMed)	8, 9, 125, 128, 137, 146, 166, 350, 360, 395, 396, 397, 398, 500, 501, 507, 516, 518, 519, 521, 533, 544, 545, 926.
	CBM	125, 395, 396, 501, 518, 926.
	Stone	146, 151 (shot), 532.
	Slate	93, 125, 146, 397, 398, 501, 502, 506, 507, 516, 518.
	Glass	9, 90, 124, 125, 127, 142, 506, 552.
	Clay Pipe	395, 501, 532.
	Flint	517.
	Iron	25, 127, 128, 137, 145, 350, 360, 395-398, 500-502, 506, 510, 517, 518, 532, 533, 545, 562, 567.
	Cu alloy	127, 166, 350, 533.
	Lead	90, 124, 396, 951.
	Environmental	8, 90, 124, 125, 127, 128, 134a, 137, 146, 151, 166, 175, 350, 360, 395, 396, 397, 398, 500, 501, 502, 504, 506, 507, 516, 517, 518, 519, 532, 533, 534, 545, 551, 552, 555, 567, 571.

Phase V - 17th century (Civil War?)

(Fig 34)

At the north end of the passage a large H-shaped feature (547, 3.96m wide, east side 3.7m long, west side 3.1m long, narrowest point 0.8m wide) had been cut through the cobbles and earlier levels to Phase I. The fill (568) contained clay with flints and some chalk, brick and animal bones. Only a few thin layers of rubble lay above it. The southern extensions were slightly deeper than the northern pair, and cut through the Phase IV rutted chalk surface (Fig 35).

An extensive layer of burning (118, containing 170) immediately below the Phase VI wall in the south-east room may be attributable to this phase. It contained a sherd of painted window glass decorated with the Paulet motto, as well as fragments of window lead, of brick covered in melted glass, and slate. It was at least 0.3m thick in places. Two other features show signs of burning. A long rectangular feature (716) at the northern end of the site had a yellow fill and charcoal lining, and a small rectangular burnt patch was

noted above chalk in the northern central area (157, 0.3 x 0.1m).

Large amounts of rubble covered the site after its destruction, and it has not been possible to assign most of them to a definite phase, particularly those in the northern part of the site. The context numbers of all except those positively identified as Phase VI or Late are listed below for reference.

Contexts:	Features	118/170, 157, 547 (568), 716.
	Rubble	GHW 4, 17, 18, 26, 62-64?
	Rubble	GHC 105.
	Rubble	GHE 95, 99, 106, 120, 123, 138.
	Rubble	GHN 32-46, 48-50, 52-55, 72-82, BH78 90-94, 110, 152, 153, 165, 167, 540, 559, 616-625, 710?, 717.
Findings:	Pottery (Med-PMed)	4, 17, 18, 35, 39, 41, 44, 53-55, 72, 74, 96/118, 99, 106, 120, 123, 152, 167, 547.
	CBM	17, 39?, 50, 52, 53, 72, 118, 120, 123, 152.
	Stone	17, 50, 72.
	Slate	46/51, 55, 105, 106, 118, 170.
	Plaster, etc	17.
	Glass	4, 17, 96/118, 99, 105, 106, 118, 120, 123, 167.
	Clay Pipe	4, 18, 54, 55, 105, 106, 118, 120, 123, 152, 167, 568.
	Flint	17.
	Iron	4, 17, 18, 54, 55, 99, 105, 118, 120, 123, 138, 167, 540, 547, 559, 568.
	Cu Alloy	4, 17, 118, 123, 547.
	Lead	17, 72, 105, 118, 152.
	Worked bone	547.
	Environmental	4, 17, 18, 33, 35-37, 39-41, 44, 46/51, 50, 52-55, 72, 74-76, 78, 80, 96/118, 99, 105, 106, 110, 118, 120, 123, 152, 167, 170, 540, 559, 568.

Phase VI - Late 17th-18th century

(Fig 34)

The walls of the gatehouse were resurfaced with brick, making them narrower than the originals, and a brick capping was set directly onto the chalk crosswall footings of the east gatehouse (104, 0.35m wide) with two layers of tile at the base. In some places, deposits of rubble and mortar were left *in situ* (112, 168, 178, 701).

The towers were given circular bases above the remains of the Tudor period octagonal walls. Curving brick walls (51, 59, foundation cut 924; 107, 0.4m wide) were bonded to them (and possibly across them, see Peers 1909, Pl 87), and a mortar lump (71) was found where wall 59 abutted wall 60 (Phase IV). The curving walls enclosed a semi-circular cobbled apron (47, 114) at the north end of the site (Fig 36). These cobbles lay across the original position of the outer gatehouse walls, up to the brick retaining walls behind the towers. A flight of six steps (757) was constructed at the entrance. The first five were made up of mortared re-used broken bricks laid on a clay and mortar base and the lower rows had mortar on their upper surface. The lowest step was of whole bricks laid on edge. The walls which retained these steps were more substantial than those flanking the cobbles.

The north end of the gatehouse in this period was marked by rough, slightly curved, reused brick and rubble revetments (65, 113) fronting earth banks. That on the west (65) was only one brick thick, and had no foundation. North of these the area had been lowered and levelled, with the addition of brown soil (615), before the cobble courtyard was laid up to the revetments. Other walls (68, 172) little more than one or two bricks thick were built between the towers and the outer walls, forming an edge to the cobbles and providing support for the revetments.

In addition poor quality walls were built across the north rooms of the gatehouse (5, 25, 101, 103, c.0.6m wide), running over the outer walls from the ramparts and turning at right angles towards the north just before reaching the inner walls (on the west side at least). Similar walls (7, 0.7m wide; 96, 97, 0.75m wide, at least 0.55m high) ran across the south rooms of the gatehouse. Two small curving walls (98)

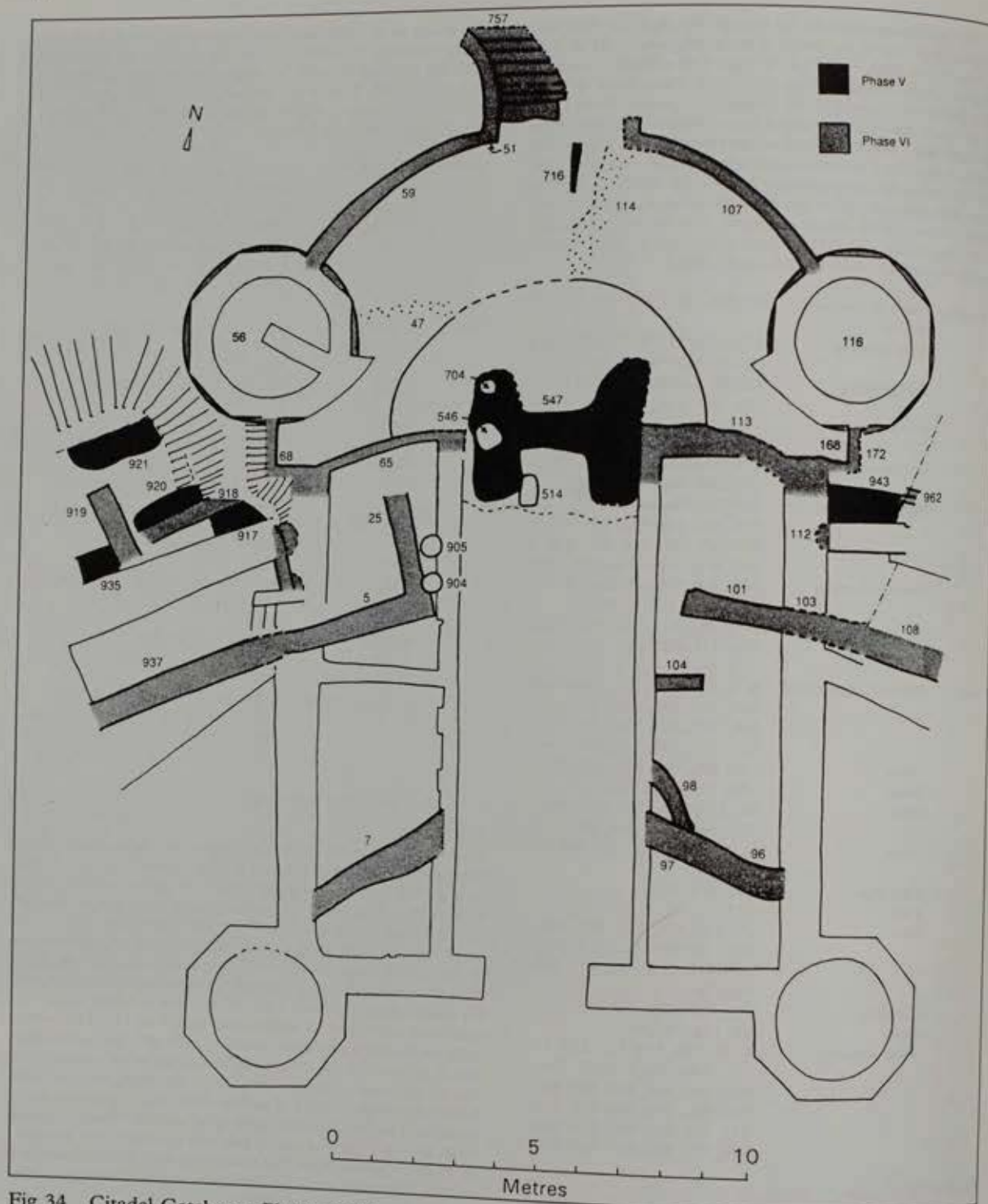


Fig 34 Citadel Gatehouse Phases V-VI.

linked these walls with the inner walls of the gatehouse, that on the west being very insubstantial (not shown on the plan).

Another small layer of cobbles (31) was found in the south-west room of the gatehouse, but its relationship with the other cobble spreads is unclear.

Contexts: N. courtyard features	47/114, 51/59/924, 107, 615, 757.
Diagonal walls	5/25, 7, 96/97, 101/103.
Revetments	65, 68, 113, 172.
Rubble, etc	71, 112, 168, 178, 701, 712-715.

Other features 31, 98, 104.

Finds:	Pottery (Med-Modern)	25, 97, 113, 114, 615.
	CBM	25, 65/68, 615.
	Slate	103, 107.
	Plaster, etc	103.
	Glass	25, 97, 103, 107.
	Clay pipe	25, 97, 615.
	Iron	25, 97, 103, 113, 615.
	Cu Alloy	615.
	Lead	114, 615.
	Environmental	25, 97, 103, 107, 113.



Fig 35 View from the north of the H-shaped feature 547 which cuts the rutted chalk surface 504 of Phase IV.

Later features

Three features cut the H-shaped intrusion at the north end of the gatehouse passage. A square posthole with an ovoid base (514, 0.74 × 0.72m at top, 0.65m deep) cut the south-west corner. The fill consisted of (522) light brown silt and (523) grey-brown silty clay, with charcoal and chalk fragments. An irregular pit (546, 0.7 × 0.75m) containing dark brown loam with fragments of brick, flint and chalk, animal bones and snail shells (554) cut the west side. A small round posthole (704, 0.46 × 0.37m) cut the north-west corner, and a similar one was found at the north-east corner (708), but it is possible that these are linked with the Phase V feature.

Two other postholes (904, 905, 0.5m diameter, grey fill) cut walls 8 and 900 (ie Phases IV and IIIb) in the north room of the west gatehouse. Their relationship to wall 25 (Phase VI) is uncertain.

A large amount of rubble was found in the east, west and north areas, probably related to the collapse of the poorly constructed Phase VI walls and later activity at the site (14, 16, 20, 58, 61, 91, 111, 116, 117, 119, 121, 122, 136, 149, 171, 0511/0512/770).

Finally, a layer of topsoil and turf (1,88, 2, 89, 3, 6, 56, 69, 126) was laid over the gatehouse area, directly above the Phase IV cobbles in the passageway and above the rubble layers elsewhere.

Contexts:	Features	514 (522, 523), 546 (554), 704, 708, 904, 905.
	Rubble	14, 16, 20, 58, 61, 91, 111, 116, 117, 119, 121, 122, 136, 149, 171, 0511/0512/770.
	Topsoil, etc	1/88, 2/89, 3, 6, 56, 69, 126, 718.
Finds:	Pottery (PMed-Modern)	2, 3, 6, 16, 69, 88, 89, 91, 111, 117, 121, 136, 149, 171, 0511, 0512, 770.
	CBM	2, 3, 16, 56, 88, 89, 111, 117
	Slate	3, 14, 16, 89, 136.
	Plaster, etc	554.
	Glass	3, 56, 69, 89, 111, 116, 117, 121, 136, 149, 0511, 0512.



Fig 36 The flint cobbled apron 114 on the east side of the gate passage, viewed from the north.

Clay pipe	2, 3, 6, 16, 58, 69, 89, 111, 117, 121, 136, 0511, 0512.
Flint	136.
Iron	2, 3, 58, 61, 69, 89, 91, 111, 116, 117, 121, 122, 136, 149, 554, 0511, 0512, 770.
Lead	149, 0512.
Coin	770.
Environmental	1, 2, 3, 6, 16, 20, 56, 58, 69, 89, 91, 111, 116, 117, 121, 136, 149, 171, 522, 523, 554, 0511.

Unphased/Unidentified Contexts

A number of contexts from the 1978 excavation have not been identified, either because no information was recorded about them, or the information is not specific enough to locate them on the plans. They probably relate to the western gatehouse, Phase IV or later. Wall 19 is said to belong to the Phase IV gatehouse and "5 and 25 seem to be built up to it". It could be the northern half of Wall 23. Wall 21 is listed as a "wall and rubble core", but no further information is available. No information is available for BH78 86-89, but there are finds from 86, and BH78 90-94 were used. Contexts 11-13 and 15 are listed as "Basement clearance", which in GHE apparently means the upper layers of the two rooms. No information was available for 28-30, but there were finds from 29, which was planned and could be rubble spill from Wall 7, or a fill between Walls 7, 8 and 9.

A few contexts from later years have also been difficult to assign

to phases. In 1981, some "wall footings" (562) were found emerging from under Wall 94/102 (Phase IV) and running E-W, made up of large flint, chalk and greensand blocks. Unfortunately this feature is not marked on the plans. A group of flints in clay (570) found below the pebble surface 177 may have been packing inserted in the 1979 construction of a walkway, since a context label was found below them. Layers 627-633 and 637 refer to the section cut to the east of the flint-lined pit, but their relationship to other features is unclear. They are all pre-Phase VI, but closer phasing is not possible.

Contexts:	11-13, 15, 19, 21, 28-30, BH78 86-89, 562, 570, 626-633, 637.
-----------	---

Finds:	Pottery (LMed-PMed)	11, 12, 15, 29, 86, 637.
	CBM	11, 12, 86.
	Stone	86.
	Iron	11, 12, 29, 637.
	Cu alloy	11.
	Glass	15, 29.
	Environmental	11, 12, 15, 19, 29.

Ringwork Terminals - Structural Evidence by Phase

As the two ringwork terminals have a number of features in common, they will be considered together. For the major features on the west rampart, refer to the plan in Fig 37, and Fig 38 shows the plan and section of the east rampart. The phases of the features are shown on the gatehouse area phase plans (Figs 24, 28, 30, 32 & 34).

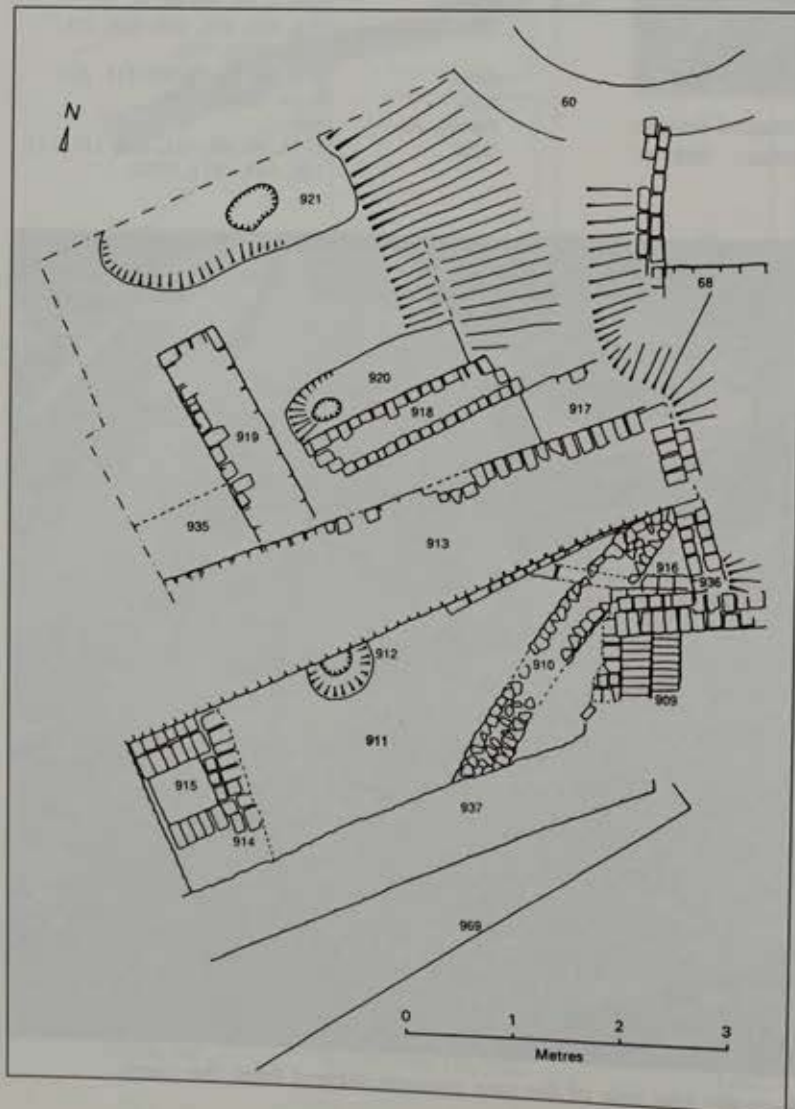


Fig 37 Ringwork Terminal West.

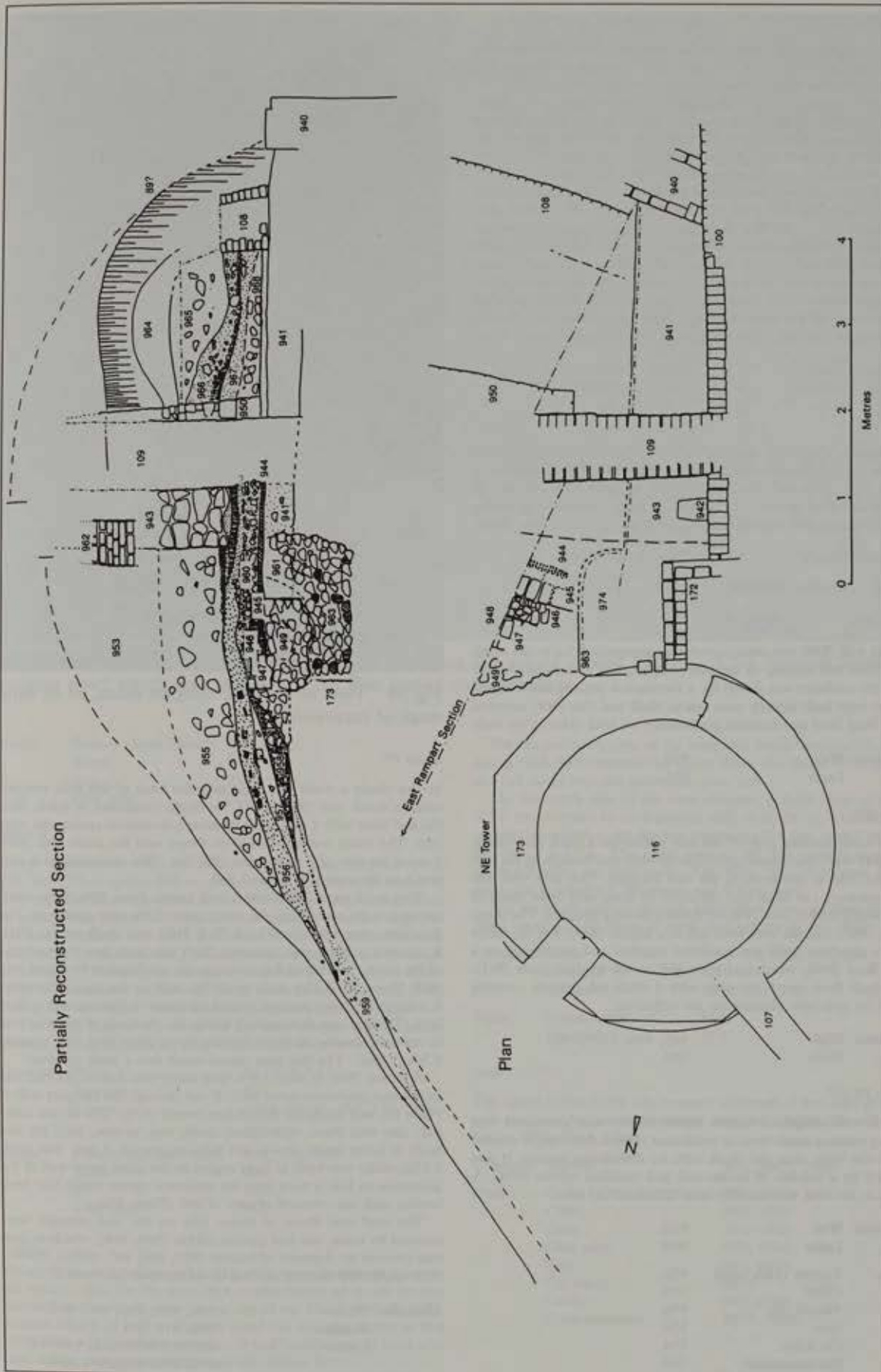


Fig 38 Ringwork Terminal East - Partially reconstructed section and plan.

Phases I-II

Both ramparts at their lowest levels consisted of solid re-deposited chalk (unnumbered). On the east side, excavations behind the north-east tower showed that the tower cut this chalk (0524).

A small posthole (912; 0.64m diameter, post shadow 0.3m diameter, soft patch of ash in brown clay) found at the lowest level of the west ringwork excavation may belong to one of the early phases. It is not clear which layer it cut, but the fill contained some winkle shells which were also present in layer 954 (Phase IIIb).

The east ringwork terminal excavations revealed two features which may belong to the early period. A flint revetment wall (963) of similar construction to the flint-lined pit, was found at the north end of the section, built in a triangular-shaped cutting (974, filled with khaki clay, tile, flint and ash). It consisted of rounded flints and re-used stone and apparently cut a massive mortared flint and stone footing in orange mortar (949) located in a chalk and clay filled foundation trench visible on the south side only. Wall 963 ran east into the present rampart, but was originally located at the lip of the main ditch.

Contexts: Chalk	(unnumbered), 0524?
Features	912, 949, 963/974.

Phase III

Immediately above the chalk in the east rampart, there was a layer of light grey clay with chalk, (0508, 0510, 958, 959), which contained brick, flint and tile, and covered the early flint wall 949. A deposit of yellow mortar (0525) found behind the north-east tower, and containing roof tile but no brick, may also belong to this phase.

Contexts: Layers	0508/0510, 958/959, 0525.
Finds: Pottery (Med?)	0510.

Phase IIIa

A chalk wall (950) was constructed approximately 1.5m to the south of the flint wall footing on the east rampart, and at a slightly higher level. No evidence was found for a foundation trench, and it seems to have been built directly onto mixed chalk and clay (961) rammed into a hard level and running horizontally on both sides of the wall.

Contexts: Wall	950.
Layer	961.

Phase IIIb

At the north-eastern edge of the east gatehouse a brick and rubble wall (945-947) was constructed directly onto the remains of the earlier flint wall at the front of the east rampart. The new wall was approximately 1m thick and consisted of inner and outer skins of brick with a rubble core (946) of dressed stone fragments. The outer bricks (947) and the core were set in a trench (948), but the inner surface of bricks (945) was mortared together and sat directly on a chalk floor (944), which had been laid on the levelled chalk (961). The chalk floor was 1.3m wide with a black ash deposit covering it, but its east-west dimensions are unknown.

Contexts: Wall	945, 946, 947 (948).
Floor	944.

Phases III-IV

On the west rampart a narrow mortared flint and greensand wall footing running north-west to south-east (910; 0.4m wide, 3 courses high) was built onto the chalk with no foundation trench. It was covered by a deposit of brown soil and building rubble (954). A break in the wall was marked by a 'threshold' of tiles.

Contexts: Wall	910.
Layer	954.
Finds: Pottery (16th cent)	954.
CBM	954.
Plaster, etc	954.
Iron	954.
Cu Alloy	954.
Environmental	954.



Fig 39 View of the west rampart room, at an early stage of excavation.

Phase IV

In this phase a room was built into the back of the west rampart with its north wall (913, 1.0-1.5m thick, composed of brick, flint, tile and bone with a clay core) forming a revetment against the rampart. The room was trapezoidal in shape, and the south wall (969) formed the side of a deep cellar (Fig 39). This arrangement is mirrored on the east side by wall 940.

Two brick steps (909) with a wall beside them (936, 0.3m wide) led up into the room from the north room of the west gatehouse. The floor was apparently of laid brick (914, 916?) on a chalk surface (911). A complex of flues and chimneys (915) was built into the west end of the room. An arched flue to the south was blocked by a later wall (937, Phase VI, 0.75m wide by 0.75m high to the top of the arch). It entered the room beneath a brick platform (0.75m square) at floor level. The flue was then carried within the thickness of the west wall to another, smaller platform (0.45m above floor level, flue opening 0.30x 0.45m). The flue then turned south into a brick chimney.

A trench (941, at least 0.8-0.98m wide) was dug on the east side of the east gatehouse outer wall. It cut through the rampart wall of Phase III, and an earlier foundation trench (974). The fill was compact clay with flints, with mixed chalk, clay, mortar, flint, tile and brick at lower levels. It was not fully excavated. A new wall (108, 0.75m wide) was built at right angles to the main outer wall of the gatehouse to link it back into the defensive circuit which had been broken with the removal of part of 950 (Phase IIIa).

The wall and floors of Phase IIIb on the east rampart were covered by brick, tile and mortar rubble (960, 968), which in turn was covered by deposits of mortar (957, 956, 967, 0506?, 0509?). This apparently formed the top of the rampart in Phase IV.

Contexts: Walls	910, 913, 936, 940, 969.
Features	909, 915, 941.
Layers	0506?, 0509?, 911, 914/916, 956, 957, 960, 967, 968.

Fig 40 View of the east rampart room, at an early stage of excavation.

Finds: Pottery (Med?)
St
In
Cl

Phase V

Rough chalk
955, 945, 946
40), were tips
in orange clay
the west. A thin
chalk wall, the
of the bank. T
pret, but it
brown clay an
The brick f
possibly during

Contexts: Wa
Fea
Lay

Finds: Pot
CR
Je
Clay

Phase VI

Rough brick an
the earlier cur
survived in situ.
A short length
919, 0.6m wide
flint, and a stru

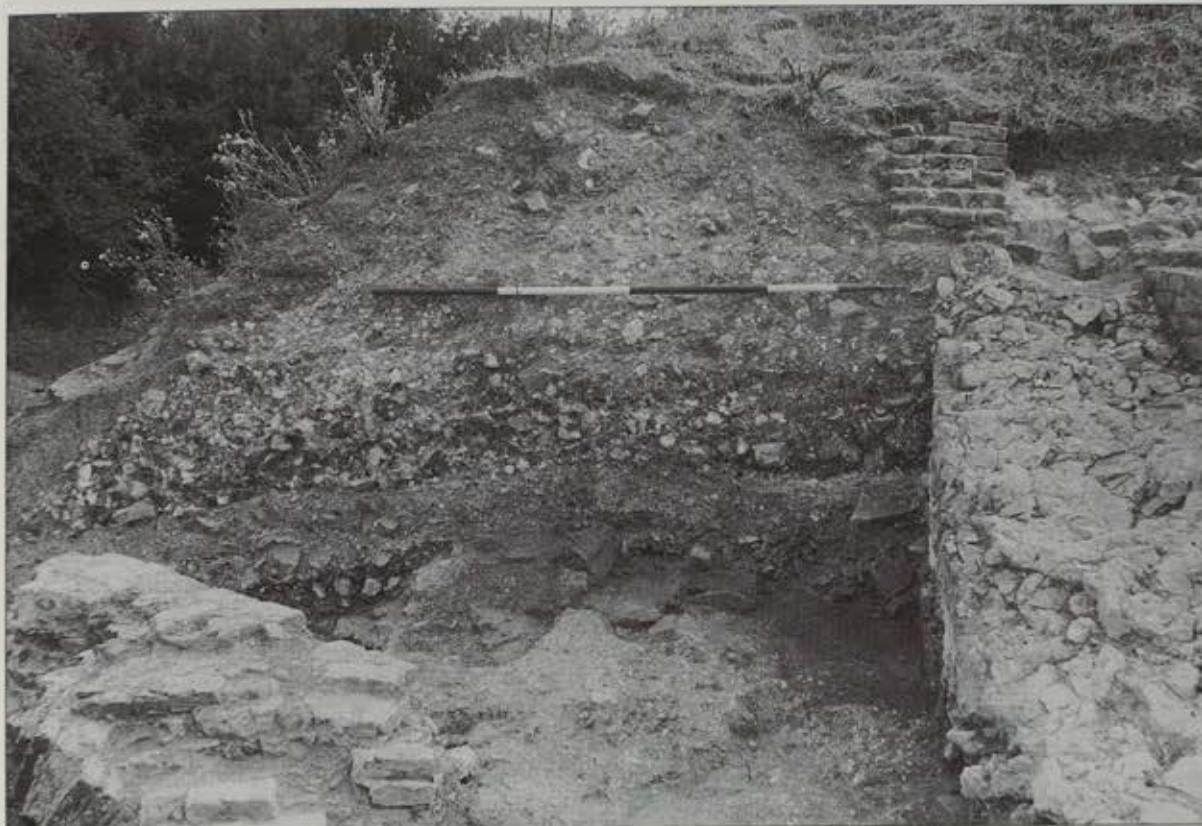


Fig 40 View of the Ringwork Terminal East showing the tips of subsoil 955 (the 0.7m deposits below the ranging pole) which may represent Civil War period strengthening.

Finds:	Pottery (Med-PMed)	911, 0509.
	Stone	911.
	Iron	0509.
	Clay pipe	911.

Phase V

Rough chalk block walls were uncovered on both ramparts (917, 935, 943). Piled against 943 on the east side, as seen in section (Fig 40), were tips of re-deposited subsoil (955) consisting of large flints in orange clay mixed with chalk. This material was not noted to the west. A timber slot (942) had been cut into the end of the east chalk wall, the beam running parallel with the ground, not the slope of the bank. The layers to the rear of wall 943 are less easy to interpret, but it is likely that two of them, chalk lumps with flint (966) brown clay and flints (965), were deposited during this phase.

The brick floor of the room on the west rampart was replaced, possibly during this phase, with a dirty clay floor (952).

Contexts:	Walls	917/935, 943.
	Features	942.
	Layers	0504, 0505?, 952, 955, 965, 966.

Finds:	Pottery (LMed-PMed)	952, 955, 965.
	CBM	955.
	Jet	0505.
	Clay pipe	952.

Phase VI

Rough brick and rubble walls (918, 962) were constructed across the earlier ruins. To the west (918, 0.48m wide) up to six courses survived in situ. Both walls sat on top of the Phase V chalk walls. A short length of wall in English bond ran at right angles to 918 (919, 0.6m wide, ten courses high). It had foundations of brick and flint, and a straight joint with wall 913 (Phase IV).

On the southern sides of the ramparts, brick-faced rubble revetments (108, 937) retained the layers above the Phase III/IV rooms, and led down into the gatehouse area (qv).

On the north side of the west rampart, a thick layer of rubble (973) was overlain by re-deposited dirty chalk (972). This area was roughly rectangular, the flat top measuring 3 x 3m, with a slope to the east 3 x 1.5m. The chalk was cut by two parallel slots with small postholes set into them (920, 921). The slots were 0.45m wide, the postholes 0.3m across and 0.22m deep.

On the south side of the east rampart section, a hump of chalk (964) overlying the Phase V bank may belong to this phase.

Contexts:	Walls	108, 918, 919, 937, 962.
	Features	920, 921.
	Layers	964, 972, 973.

Finds:	Pottery (RB)	964.
	Cu Alloy	919.

Late

The upper layers of the east rampart consisted of fine light grey soil with evidence for individual turves, containing brick, tile and stone rubble (953, 0503, 1001).

Contexts:	Rubble	953, 0503, 1001.
-----------	--------	------------------

Finds:	Pottery (PMed-Modern)	953, 0503, 1001.
	CBM	953, 1001.
	Glass	953, 0503.
	Clay pipe	953, 0503, 1001.
	Iron	953, 0503.
	Cu Alloy	0503.
	Lead	953, 0503.
	Environmental	0503, 1001.

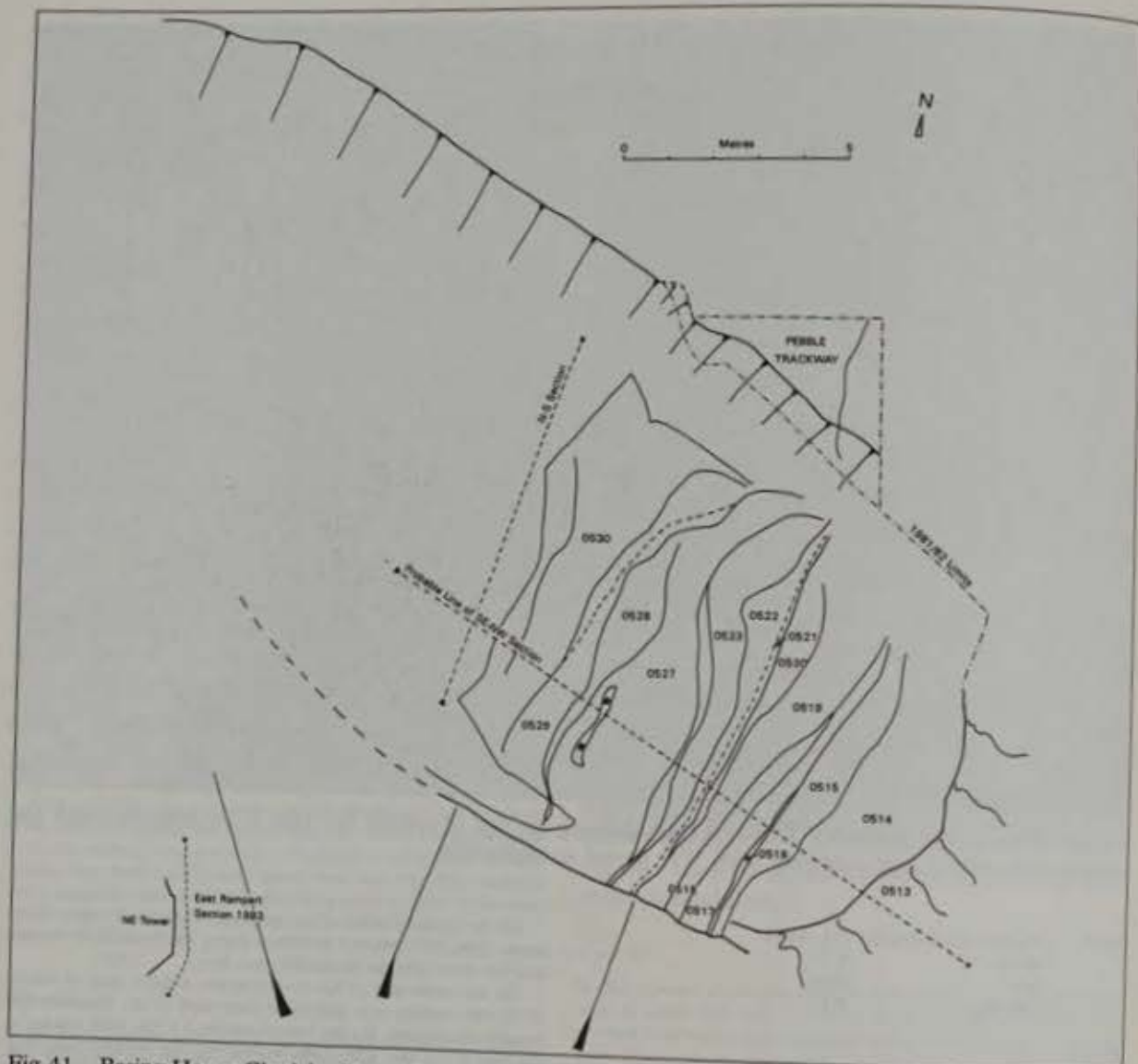


Fig 41 Basing House Citadel – Plan of East Ditch Excavation showing tip lines and relationship to Gatehouse.

The Ditch East and West of the Bridge

West Ditch

As part of the 1978 programme of work the Museums Service team began to cut a 4m wide section of the ditch to the west of the bridge. Work in this area continued until 1981, but the difficulties of shoring the loose rubble fill caused it to be abandoned and back-filled before the bottom was reached. Unfortunately, only the context sheets remain as a record of this work, the plans and sections are missing. Below the turf and topsoil was a layer of rubble (contexts 66, 67, 70, 83, 85, 140, 154, 155, 401) containing pottery of the 16th to 20th centuries. This sealed a buried turf line (84, 161, 403) contained medieval and 19th century sherds. The next layer of rubble (163, 402) contained pottery of 17th century date or earlier, and two more layers contained some rubble in yellow clay (405, 406) and sandy (169, 408) matrices. Both produced 15th to 18th century pottery.

Beneath this a grey clay-silt layer (409) contained chalk, tile and brick and pottery from the 17th century or earlier. Five other contexts were identified beneath this, but their direct relationship to 409 is not recorded, and they did not contain dateable finds. All were at the south end of the trench and consisted of a layer of mortar (410, 414, SW section), a layer of reddish clay (415) dark brown compact clay (412), and two layers of chalk (411, 413).

East Ditch

The area of ditch east of the bridge was investigated between 1981 and 1983, with most of the work being undertaken as part of a Youth Training Scheme. In 1983 the adjacent ringwork terminal was examined as part of the Museums Service excavations, although it was not possible at the time to link the two areas of work directly.

The upper layers of the east ditch have a similar sequence to that in the west. The turf (451) and topsoil (452) were removed to reveal rubble (453) and buried turf (454). Beneath them were layers of light brown clay-silt (455), yellow-brown clay (456) and grey-brown clay (457). These upper layers contained medieval to 20th century pottery.

All the above layers were given the single number (461) when the section was re-cleaned and drawn in 1982 to accommodate the large number of additional finds. Beneath them were a layer of rubble (462) and clay/loam (463) containing 17th century and earlier pottery.

The last phase of excavation (1982-3) uncovered a series of tip lines (0513-0523, 0527-0530) which were drawn in plan (Fig 41) and section (Fig 42). The layers varied from silts and clays to compact chalk and all contained some rubble. Most produced pottery of 17th century and earlier date, and it is worth noting that two layers (0515, 0516) which were of similar nature to the dark brown silt and clean red clay encountered at the lowest levels of the gatehouse excavation, contained mainly medieval and earlier sherds.

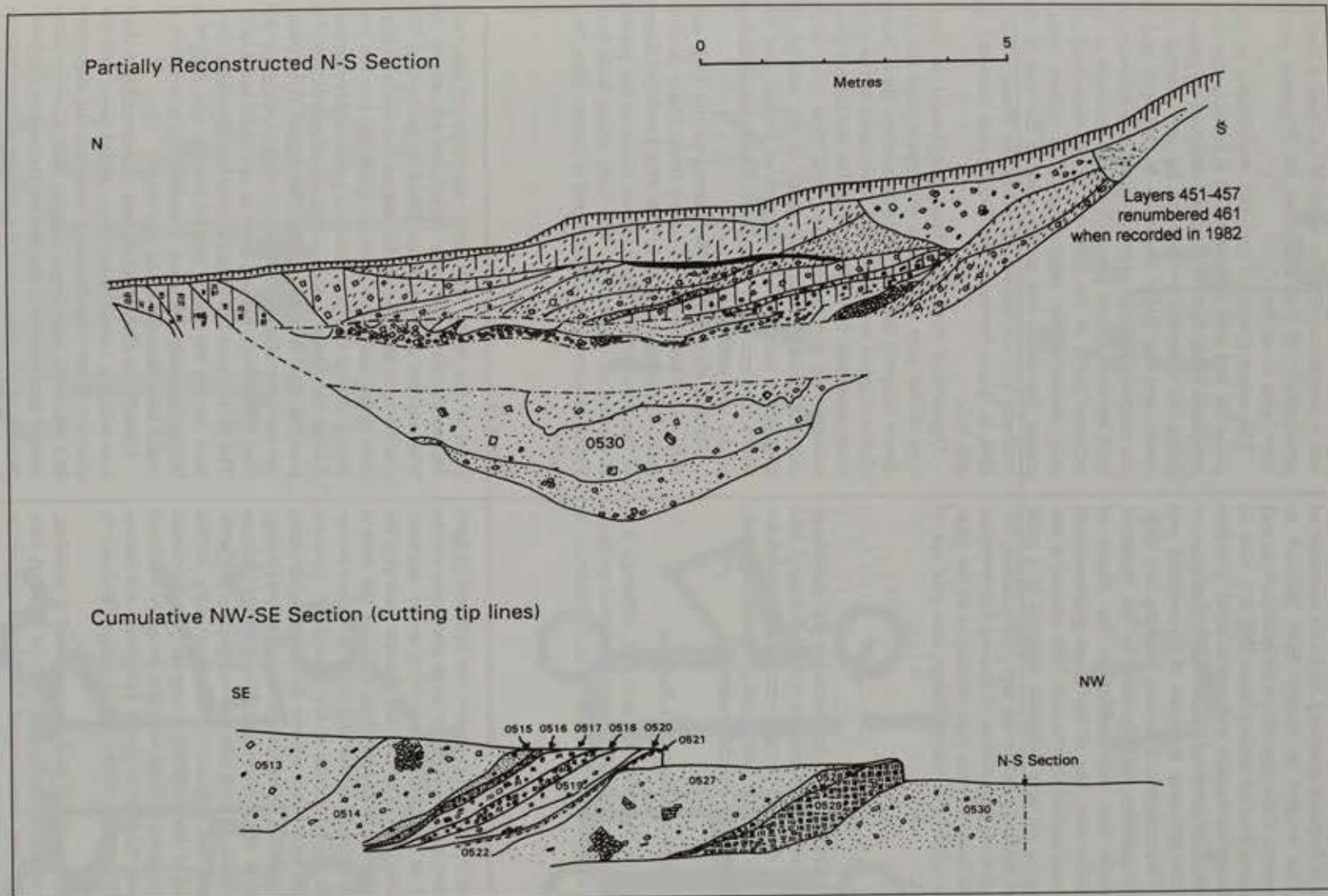


Fig 42 East Ditch (1981-83)

Gatehouse – Interpretation

The excavations in the area of the gatehouse revealed a complex of features spanning up to six centuries of activity. This ranged in nature from defence to aggrandizement, from demolition to landscaping, and can be divided into six main phases (Fig 43). Not all of these phases are equally well represented. The first three in particular involved considerable clearance, or suffered from the later episodes of destruction and clearance. Nevertheless, a picture emerges of a ringwork castle gateway, well-fortified in the medieval period, which was transformed at the hands of William Paulet into one of the finest gatehouses of the late Tudor period. In the mid-17th century it was called upon to act in a defensive capacity in a most unexpected manner, and by the late 17th century, following large-scale demolition, it formed the entrance to ornate gardens. For the past century or so the gateway has funnelled the many visitors into and out of the Citadel.

Pre-Phase I

The dark brown clay noted beneath the gatehouse features was also discovered in the kitchen area and elsewhere on the site. It must represent a cultivation soil, and contained prehistoric, Romano-British, Saxon and medieval sherds.

Phase I – Timber gatetower and Barbican

This phase has been divided into two, although it is not entirely clear how the features assigned to them related to each other, or even to later evidence in some cases.

Phase Ia

The earliest construction on the site appears to have been a timber gatetower. Four large postholes can be interpreted as the foundations of a tower approximately 4m square. Why the two eastern post-pits are so much larger and deeper than those to the west is not clear. It is possible that the latter were not recognised in the initial stages of the excavation process, or that they had been eroded by the neighbouring gully. The gully could be interpreted as an eaves-drip, particularly as there is evidence for a similar feature on the other side. There was no evidence for any wall-footings, and the position of the west gully, within the confines of the building, suggests that the tower had an open ground floor with one or more enclosed storeys above. Similar ringwork gatetowers are known at Penmaen (Alcock 1966) and Rumney (Webster & Cherry 1979).

The position of the gate also presents a problem, as there is no evidence for gate or door posts. A similar difficulty was encountered by Alcock (*op cit*) at Castle Tower, Penmaen, although the gatetower there was slightly wider. His reconstruction involved the use of sole plates on which to set the door posts.

At Basing, there is evidence for a metalled road running inwards from the ditch to the north side of the gate tower, and this would imply that the entrance was a maximum of 1.5m wide. If so, then a similar arrangement to that suggested for Penmaen could have been in use here.

The other postholes and pits attributable to this phase are less easy to interpret. It is possible that they represent some form of timber revetment or palisade lining an entrance passage up to and beyond the tower, and the larger postholes at the north end of the entrance passage may have formed a barbican, or held another simple gate. The small posthole at the extreme north of the site, cut by the flint-lined pit, may represent the beginnings of a timber bridge across the ditch, but as the area to the east of the roadway was not excavated below the Phase VI cobbles, it is not known if the feature was mirrored on this side.

Deposits of chalk and flint were present on either side of the gate passage in this phase, and the evidence suggests that the flints formed the basal layers of the original ramparts, or a revetment to the ringwork terminals. It would appear that the timber revetments were positioned first, and flint and chalk dumped behind them. The gully to the east of the gate tower contained a quantity of broken roof tile which may represent demolition rubble accumulating at the end of this phase.

Sixteen sherds of pottery dating to the 13th century or earlier, were recovered from Phase Ia contexts. Three features (361, 364, 372) produced sherds of the same green glazed vessel. None of the pottery is worthy of illustration. The only other finds from Phase Ia were animal bones and a copper alloy fragment.

Phase Ib

One of the most impressive elements of the early entrance complex is the flint-lined pit which lies between the ditch and the Phase Ia gatetower. The comparative isolation of this feature has made its position in the sequence open to question, but the preferred view is that it represents a major development during the Phase I occupation. Stratigraphically it is possible that it belongs with the Phase II building, but the poor alignment between the two suggests that they are unlikely to have been in use at the same time. The pit respects the Phase Ia roadway, but if the posthole cut by the south side of the pit was part of a bridge carrying this road, it is difficult to see how it could have functioned at this stage.

Initially the flint-lined pit was interpreted as a shaft into which a raised drawbridge would pivot, but the absence of any corroborating evidence, the alignment and the early date argue against this. A more satisfactory explanation is that the pit represents the foundations of a barbican tower guarding the entrance to the ringwork. Two stone-lined pits of a similar size have been found at Launceston Castle, and interpreted as tower bases, and evidence of small mural



Fig 43

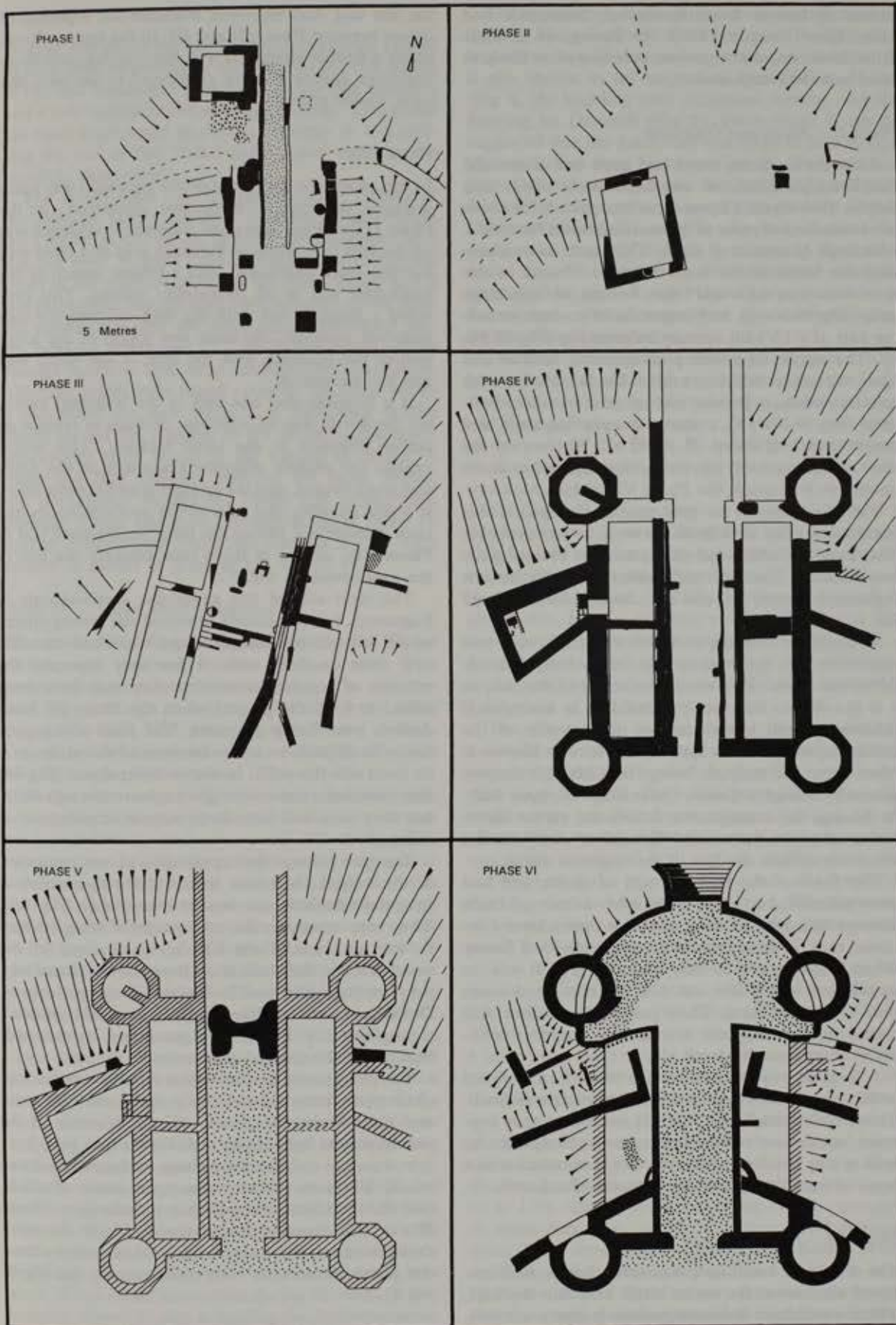


Fig 43 Citadel Gatehouse Interpretative Sequence.

towers is known from Restormel, Newcastle and other sites (Kenyon 1991). At Basing, as at these other locations, the superstructure was most likely to have been half-timbered.

Phase II – Rectilinear Gate tower

After the barbican tower had gone out of use, the flint-lined pit filled, or was deliberately filled, with debris. Two distinct layers were recognised; the lower level consisted of parts of the east and north flint walls, with large quantities of daub. This daub must represent the fabric of the superstructure. Found in this layer were iron nails and other fittings, an iron hinge strap (Fig 59 No 4), and fragments of pottery, including part of a 13/14th century baluster jug (Fig 45 No 6). The upper layer was predominantly mortar and again represents building rubble. Finds included 14th century sherds, a Roman tile, an iron crossbow bolt-head (Fig 59 No 18), a stirrup or spur fragment, and copper and lead sheets. A sherd of 17th century red ware was presumably intrusive, from the upper layers immediately beneath the Phase VI cobbles.

The alignment of the gate passage changed in this period, swinging slightly to the west. It was probably resurfaced with flint and chalk, and the Phase I gully was filled in. The flint and chalk surface to the east contained pottery of 13/14th century date (Fig 45 No 7).

A rectilinear building with flint and chalk walls was constructed on the west side of the gateway. No evidence was found for a similar structure to the east, so it is possible to interpret this building as a simple, if substantial, wall tower standing to one side of the entrance passage. This type of entrance is known at other sites, one example being the 12th/13th century gate at Deddington Castle, Oxfordshire (Kenyon *ibid*). At Basing, the arrangement echoes the earlier barbican structure on the west of the roadway, but with the tower drawn into the line of the ringwork circuit.

The floor of the building was of chalk, and had been resurfaced at some point with a layer of chalk above a thin lens of dirty silt. The upper layer contained roof tile fragments and a single sherd of Surrey White Ware (late 13th-early 14th century). It was cut by two pits which also cut into the north and south walls of the building. Their purpose is unclear, but their symmetry suggests a structural purpose, possibly of a temporary nature.

A few features on the east side have been assigned to this phase, although their interpretation is difficult. Those cut through the Phase Ia revetment may represent a door or passageway onto the ramparts. An area of clay overlying edge-set tiles, associated with a layer of burning may be the remains of a hearth.

Phase III – First Gatehouse

The Phase II building presumably had a half-timbered superstructure on its chalk and flint footings, which would have been comparatively easy to remove. A thin layer of grey clay was present across most of

the site and may represent evidence for a period of disuse between Phases II and III. In the late medieval phase a double gatehouse was constructed, and these buildings appear to have continued in use into the early Tudor period.

Phase IIIa

In this phase the alignment of the approach was again changed, swinging 25° to the east, compared with the Phase II building. The most substantial evidence was on the east side. Parts of the inner wall and cross wall footings were uncovered, and a robber trench to the south-east was in all probability related. This provided a tangible link with the wall cut into the east ringwork terminal. No trace was found of the south wall of the building, and the area of the north wall was not excavated.

It is possible that one half of the building, probably the north, was an addition, perhaps to replace an earlier structure in the same location. This would explain the slightly different alignment of the north and south rooms, and the straight joint between them. It is also possible that part of the southern room had been demolished before the brick drains were laid in Phase IIIb, as one of them runs beneath the line of the south-western wall.

The west side of this gatehouse survived only in fragments, but apparently mirrored the arrangements to the east. Both inner southern walls had tiles laid over their southern ends. These may represent the remains of a string course, or they may have been added to level the ground when the Phase IV foundations were being prepared. The plan of the gatehouse is difficult to assess because of the absence of its front (north) walls. In the reconstruction (Fig 43) they have been drawn at right angles to the side walls, but they may well have been curved or polygonal at this period.

The gate passage during this period was composed of thick chalk, laid over loose rubble. A number of irregular channels cut into this roadway (Fig 35). They may represent the movement of wheeled traffic into and out of the Citadel, particularly in wet weather when the chalk must have been soft and slippery, or they may well be natural drainage runnels. Drainage seems to have been a constant problem throughout the life of the gatehouse, presumably because of the marked gradient into the site.

The presence of pits and other features cut into the chalk passageway are not easily explained. The brick and stone kerbs which run across the centre of the passageway at right angles to the walls may have been introduced to stabilise the passage surface when it was relaid. The new roadway was again made of chalk, laid above rubble, but whether it belongs to Phase IIIa or IIIb depends on its relationship to the brick drain, which was not noted. Most of the pottery from this phase dates to the 15th/16th centuries (eg Fig 45 No 8).

Phase IIIb

During this period to have been to the east of and a new structure has been introduced into the site, probably showing the passage, the Citadel was not seen room of the less substantial the passage lies running passage may. Although brick it ran below planks serve impressions chalk and and presumed although it activity. Pottery century or e

The drain the passage, the Citadel was not seen room of the less substantial the passage lies running passage may. Although brick it ran below planks serve impressions chalk and and presumed although it activity. Pottery century or e

Phase IV –

The major period, and ground plan sent day, although during the tion. Based probably to

The gate to a symmetrical corner entrance pass

form the ap type of plan houses, part of England gatehouse gatehouses

Cowdray H extravagant Layer Marn had rooms

plan, however range of buildings at Basing is medieval ring

Gatehouse wealth and purpose. The more substantial (although also). When

sumably play forces at bay

Phase IIIb

During this phase the late medieval buildings appear to have been improved by the addition of brick drains to the east building, a new room on the east rampart, and a new surface in the entrance passage. This phase has been interpreted as the first attempt at remodelling the site in the Tudor period, and as such was probably short-lived.

The drains were cut through the chalk surface of the passage, and apparently channelled water from the Citadel to the ditch, although the northern end was not seen. A drain head located in the north-east room of the gatehouse joined the main drain, and a less substantial feature may have carried run-off from the passageway into the brick drain. Tile-lined gullies running either side of a pit in the centre of the passage may also have been connected to this system. Although bricks were found covering the drain where it ran below the later walls, it is likely that timber planks served this purpose in the gateway, and wood impressions were found in the mortar in places. A chalk and flint roadway covered the brick drains, and presumably formed the Phase IIIb passageway, although it may represent the beginnings of Phase IV activity. Pottery from Phase IIIb contexts is 15th-16th century or earlier in date (eg Fig 45 No 9).

Phase IV - Tudor Brick Gatehouse

The major rebuilding took place later in the Tudor period, and involved another shift of axis. This ground plan remains almost unchanged to the present day, although a few modifications were made during the Civil War period and following demolition. Based on the documentary evidence this work probably took place between 1531 and 1561.

The gatehouse was built of brick, in English bond, to a symmetrical rectangular plan with four octagonal corner towers, and two rooms either side of an entrance passage. The inner walls continued north to form the approach to the bridge. Examples of this type of plan are seen at many contemporary country houses, particularly in the southern and eastern parts of England. Surviving examples include the second gatehouse at Hampton Court Palace, the stone gatehouses at Titchfield Abbey (Hampshire) and Cowdray House, Midhurst (West Sussex), and the extravagant eight-storey brick built gatehouse at Layer Marney (Essex). None of these seem to have had rooms as an integral part of their ground-floor plan, however, and all were constructed as part of a range of buildings. The more compact arrangement at Basing is presumably a product of its origins as a medieval ringwork castle entrance.

Gatehouses such as these were built as a display of wealth and status rather than for any true defensive purpose. The Basing version appears to have been far more substantial than its immediate predecessor (although an imposing front may have existed here also). When called into action during the siege, it presumably played its part in holding the Parliamentary forces at bay.

The appearance of the gatehouse is documented by the fifth Marquess, who described it as '*the loftie gatehouse with foure Turrets looking northwards*' (see p6). It is also shown in the engraving attributed to Hollar (Fig 4, the building with octagonal turrets) and the drawing by Dunstall (Fig 5). From these it can be suggested that the gatehouse was three or four storeys high and had large windows on the internal, and probably also the external, facades. Finds collected during the 19th century excavations provide further architectural details, such as the use of stone for quoins and tracery, and the presence of decorative stone roundels similar to the terracotta examples adorning Hampton Court Palace. Large quantities of fragmentary worked stone were also recovered during the recent excavations.

The brick drains of the previous phase seem to have gone out of use when the major gatehouse was built, as the foundations appear to have cut through them, and they contain construction debris. At least some of the walls of the Phase III building were removed to foundation level before the erection of the new structure.

The internal arrangement of the corner towers is not certain, but it seems likely that the southern pair at least had spiral staircases, leading down into the cellars which flanked the gatehouse in this phase. It has been suggested that the northern towers held garderobes, but no evidence was found for this. The two blocked apertures at the front of the towers at ground level were approximately 0.6m wide, and could possibly have held doors, a feature seen in other gatehouses of this type.

The absence of a proper drainage system seems to have affected the gate passage surface during the construction phase, and a number of gullies formed running south to north. Two small postholes cutting this surface were possibly dug to hold scaffolding, but no others were found. After this stage, the passageway was again resurfaced with smooth chalk, which was cut by rectangular postholes on either side, probably marking the site of a temporary gate. The large area of burning in the northern end of the passage may result from the destruction of this gate.

The final stage in the life of the passageway was another resurfacing, this time with medium and small flint cobbles bedded into layers of soil and rubble. The surface continued into the Citadel and formed a large open courtyard in the northern quarter of the enclosure. The wear on these cobbles suggests that the surface was in use by heavy traffic for some time, and it must belong to the main Tudor phase of the gatehouse. However, at least two sherds found below the cobbles (in the bedding material and in the fill of the west gatehouse inner wall foundation trench) may be of 17th century date, suggesting that the passage, or some part of it, could have been relaid at some point. Later developments removed this surface at the north end of the passage, and it is not known how far it extended in that direction. It is likely, however, that the cobbled surface would at least have continued across the bridge.

The remains of the Tudor bridge were uncovered by the 19th century excavations. It is a brick built structure aligned on the central passage walls of the gatehouse. At the centre of the ditch it turns sharply towards the north-west. The reason for this is unclear, but it may relate to the position of the bailey gatehouse to the west.

As in Phase III, the majority of pottery recovered from Phase IV contexts was of 15th-16th century date (Fig 45 Nos 12-15).

Phase V – The Civil War Siege and Destruction (1643-1650)

A few modifications were apparently made to the gatehouse after the completion of Phase IV, mostly on the ramparts and in the gate passage area. These have been interpreted as attempts to strengthen the defences before or during the Civil War sieges. Within the gatehouse itself, only two features could be assigned to the destruction phase.

A deep and extensive H-shaped feature (Fig 35) was found cutting the Phase IV cobbles at the north end of the gate passage. The most likely explanation for its existence is that it held some form of strengthening for the original doors or gates, which was later removed. Three documentary sources mention that a gatehouse door was barricaded during the siege, and although it was not this particular thoroughfare being described, it is probable that many of the gates would have been blocked in this way. Whatever the original purpose of this feature, it is clear that the structure related to it was removed during or soon after the siege. The few finds are of medieval and 17th century date (Fig 45 Nos 17 and 18).

An area of burning found in the south-east room of the gatehouse may also relate to the period of the siege, or indeed the fall of the House. It contained various fragments of burnt material which were probably part of the fabric of the gatehouse. These included window glass and lead comes, slate, plaster, brick, and 16th/17th century pottery.

Phase VI – Garden Phase

After the fall of Basing House in October 1645 the removal of building material was actively encouraged by Parliament. This may not have had an immediate effect on the fabric of the gatehouse, and the Dunstall engraving may have been made several years later, but the site was, to all intents and purposes, a quarry. As discussed earlier Basing was granted to Robert Wallop in 1650, but restored to the Paulets in 1662. Paradoxically it may have been this reversal of fortunes which had most impact on the gatehouse structures, as the creation of a garden in and around the Citadel may have been the spur to major demolition, site clearance, and the infilling of ditch and cellars.

The exact dating of this phase is uncertain. Some 'gardens' including a 'new walls ... and vineyards' were in existence by the time of Celia Fiennes' second visit prior to 1696 (Morris 1982) and Pococke's

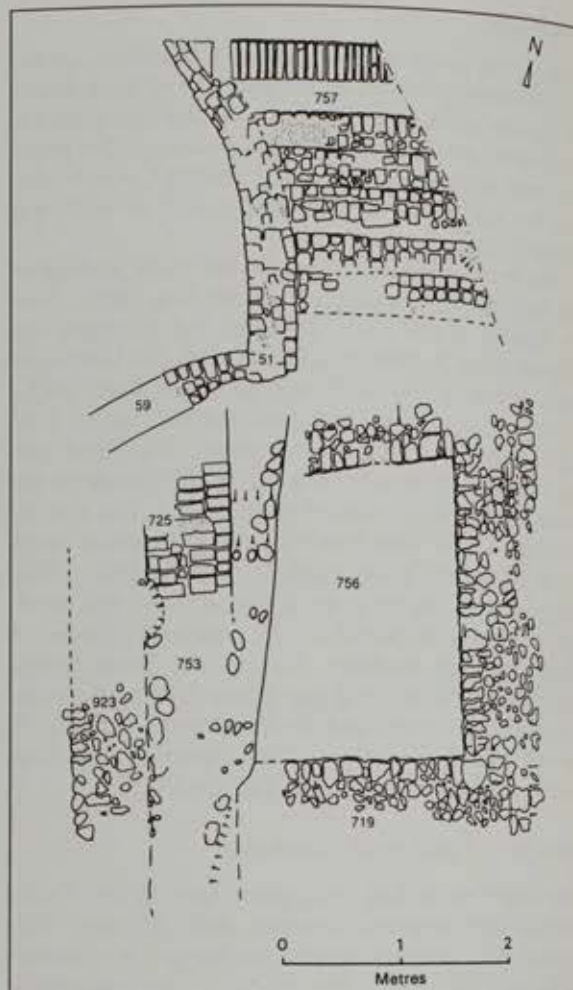


Fig 44 Citadel Gatehouse north end – Features of Phase Ib and VI including the flint-lined pit and brick steps.

description of 1754 places the (by then destroyed) vineyard in the Citadel, but there is no surviving plan of this work. The suggestion that Capability Brown (1715-1783) was involved in the scheme, however, or that the First Lord Bolton was responsible for altering the ruins in the later 18th century are discounted by Peers (1909, 564) and this effectively puts the origins of the garden phase into the late 17th century.

The foundations of the main Tudor gatehouse were made part of the garden scheme, notably with the addition of a flight of brick steps and low retaining walls, and the laying of an apron of cobbles enclosed by narrow curved walls (Figs 43 & 44). The octagonal tower bases were given a circular capping and poorly constructed brick walls were built diagonally across the north and south rooms.

The walls crossing the northern rooms may have formed the beginning of a walkway leading up from the cobbled area onto the ramparts, whilst their southern counterparts continued across the infilled cellars to the so-called 'cricket boundary wall' which runs around the Citadel interior. They were removed when the cellars were emptied during the late 19th century excavations. The interior 'cricket boundary

wall" has been
path immedi
Steps on the
gest that it
to the view
area was app
mound, four
the Bolton ex
this soil was
exercise, as
tion difficult
Old House (C
would not ha
sumably hav

Late

A few featur
have been c
Guard exerc
ular hole in
may have be
where it is i
late gatepos
mentions th
The pottery
all post-med

Ringwork

Phase I-II

Apart from
function on
gible featur
to the east,
east-west. T
which accou
Phase II gat
gests that th
stantial.

Phase IIIa

In this phas
the flint wal
surfaces exis

Phase IIIb

A brick wall
side, with th
was cut by t
tower, it is
with the gate
a corridor fr
defences, or
ties of char
here, and m
ziers for ligh

The arrang
this period is
ridor on thi

wall' has been interpreted as a revetment for a raised path immediately inside the ringwork.

Steps on the Citadel bank at strategic places suggest that it was used as a vantage point from which to view the ruins, or the gardens. The Citadel area was apparently 'entirely covered with a grassy mound, four feet in depth', which was removed by the Bolton excavations (Warren 1907). It is likely that this soil was brought in as part of the landscaping exercise, as rubble alone would have made cultivation difficult. If this is the case, then the walls of the Old House (with the possible exception of the well) would not have been visible, and gardens would presumably have been the focus of attention.

Late

A few features do not fit easily into Phase VI and may have been cut at a later date, perhaps during Home Guard exercises at the House in the 1940s. An irregular hole in the west side of the H-shaped feature may have been present in the top layers in this area, where it is interpreted as a tree hole, or it may be a late gatepost. Godwin (1882) visited the site, and mentions the presence of an iron gate in this area. The pottery from contexts assigned to this phase is all post-medieval and modern.

Ringwork Terminals - Interpretation

Phase I-II

Apart from a small posthole of uncertain date and function on the west side of the gate, the most tangible features of these phases are the two flint walls to the east, one running north-south and the other east-west. They must represent the ancillary features which accompanied the Phase Ia gatetower and the Phase II gatetower. The excavation of this area suggests that the early rampart was comparatively insubstantial.

Phase IIIa

In this phase, a chalk wall appears to have replaced the flint wall on the east side of the gateway. Floor surfaces existed to both front and rear of this wall.

Phase IIIb

A brick wall with rubble core was built on the east side, with the earlier flint wall used as footings. As it was cut by the construction of the Phase IV corner tower, it is difficult to be certain of its connection with the gatehouse. It may have formed a small room, a corridor from the gatehouse to other parts of the defences, or merely a small alcove. Substantial quantities of charcoal were trodden into the chalk floors here, and may represent the use of torches or braziers for lighting and heating.

The arrangement of buildings on the west side at this period is unknown. If there was a room or corridor on this side it would probably have been

removed during the construction of the Phase IV corner tower.

Phase III-IV

The narrow flint wall on the west rampart is difficult to interpret, owing to its strange alignment. It may have been built to help stabilize the rampart, rather than as a defensive wall in its own right. The layer of rubble and soil assigned to this phase on the west rampart contained pottery of 16th century date (Fig 45 Nos 10 and 11).

Phase IV

The most radical changes in this phase were made on the west rampart, and involved the construction of a room. The front (north) wall formed a revetment against the earlier bank or wall. If the rear (south) wall of the room was formed by the north wall of the cellar, then the room was trapezoidal in shape as shown on the plan (Fig 43).

There were two brick-built steps running up from the north room of the west gatehouse to the threshold of this room. The remains of the floor were also of brick, at a slightly lower level than the top of the steps. The bricks did not extend right across the area, so either they were removed after the destruction of the house, or there may have been a planked floor.

At the west end of the room, were a series of flues and the remains of a chimney. The system was apparently heated through an arched flue to the south. It has been suggested that tanks for heating water stood above the two flue openings. The presence of large quantities of food waste (animal bones, edible shellfish, etc) suggests that they were used for the preparation of food, but other domestic refuse was also present, and the layers may represent a general rubbish deposit.

A trench cut through the east rampart in this phase was most likely a robber trench. It was probably a continuation of the trench seen in the south room of the gatehouse. After the wall was removed, a short length of brick wall was constructed from the gatehouse to the chalk wall on the rampart, to tie it into the defensive circuit. The brick wall at the front of the east rampart was demolished at this period, and it and the adjacent room or corridor was covered with layers of rubble.

Phase V

In this phase chalk block walls were roughly constructed on both ramparts, presumably to strengthen the outer brick walls of the Tudor period. Earth was dumped in front of the chalk walls, probably at the same time. There is some documentary evidence for this, in *The Soldiers Report of Sir William Waller's Fight (1643)*, where it is recorded that the house was 'strongly walled about with earth raised against the wall, of such a thickness, that it is able to dead the greatest cannon bullet'.

Phase VI

The rough walls constructed across the gatehouse area in the garden phase were continued onto the ramparts, possibly as some form of walkway or revetment. The ramparts were apparently higher than they had been during Phase V, and the rampart rooms were probably filled in. This is not surprising when it is considered how much rubble would have been present post-Civil War. Narrow brick walls were constructed on top of both ramparts, and postholes in trenches found on the west rampart must represent a temporary structure erected in this phase.

The Ditch - Interpretation

The interpretation of the ditch fill is hampered by the fact that excavation in both areas was incomplete. In both localities nearly all of the deposits recorded and removed consisted either of debris from the post-Civil War demolition episode, or spoil from Lord Bolton's dig. An interesting detail of the latter can be construed from layers 0515 and 0516, which are similar to the pre-Phase I soils found in the gatehouse area. They indicate that some of the areas of excavation within the Citadel dug down well into the subsoils.

The Find

The finds described terminals because of and the w

**THE PO
GATEHO***Introduction*

A total of j
house and r
(including n
following re
quantificati
traced sherds
Only the ill
information

The Fabrics

Nearly forty
the whole g
divided into
classification
areas of the

Group 1

Few pieces
are generally
a few sherds
ment ware v

Group 2 -

These can
ware.

2.1. Organic

The fabric is
brown or be
grey to black
eter, and the
sherds recov

2.2. Grass

This fabric
throughout,
tion. The inc
Vessels appe
cooking pots

Chapter 5

The Citadel Gatehouse

(INCLUDING BOTH RINGWORK TERMINALS AND THE DITCH)

The Finds

The finds from this area (Fig 21, Area 1) are described by material. The gatehouse and ringwork terminals are considered separately from the ditch because of the very different nature of these deposits and the way in which they were formed.

THE POTTERY

GATEHOUSE AND RINGWORK TERMINALS

Introduction

A total of just over 6 kg of pottery was recovered from the gatehouse and ringwork terminals. The original work on this material (including most of the dating) was done by Ken Barton, and the following report is based on his notes, with additional analysis and quantification by Sue Anderson and Duncan Brown. All the illustrated sherds are shown in Fig 45, (Nos 1-39, in bold in the text). Only the illustrated pottery is described in detail, and any further information should be sought in the site archive.

The Fabrics

Nearly forty fabrics were identified in the pottery assemblage from the whole gatehouse area, including the ditch. They have been divided into eight groups for ease of description. The gatehouse classification has been used also to describe pottery finds from other areas of the site.

Group 1 - Romano-British Wares

Few pieces of Roman pottery were recovered, and the fragments are generally very abraded. Most common is grey ware (RBGW); a few sherds of oxidised, colour-coated, gold mica dusted and parchment ware were also found.

Group 2 - Saxon and Early Medieval

These can be divided into organic tempered and flint tempered wares.

2.1. Organic tempered coarse ware (OTCW)

The fabric is soft, with a powdery feel, varying in colour from red-brown or buff to grey on the margins; the core is generally light grey to black. The organic temper has left holes 1-3mm in diameter, and there is also a sparse fine-medium sand content. The few sherds recovered are of cooking pots. Saxon?

2.2. Grass tempered coarse ware (GTCW)

This fabric is hard and rough and a uniform dark grey or black throughout, although the surface may show some degree of oxidation. The inclusions consist of fine sand and coarse carbonised grass. Vessels appear to be hand-made and the forms include bowls and cooking pots. Saxon?

2.3. Soft grass tempered ware (SGTW)

Only one example of this soft, smooth fabric was identified. It was black throughout, although the surfaces were slightly brown. The sand content was more coarse than that of Fabric 2.2, and there was less grass. The sherd appeared to be from a wheel-made cooking pot with everted rim. Saxon?

2.4. Coarse flint tempered ware (CFTW)

This fabric was also represented by a single sherd. It was light grey on the internal surface, with grey margins and core, but the surface was pinkish red. The sherd was soft, with a harsh feel, and the flint content was approximately 40-50%. The vessel was a handmade cooking pot. Early Saxon?

2.5. Flint tempered coarse ware (FTCW)

The majority of early medieval sherds found at Basing House were of this fabric. The colour is variable and often patchy, ranging from dark grey to red with all permutations in between. The matrix is soft and powdery, and inclusions are coarse flint (c10%), coarse chalk (c1%), and occasionally coarse but sparse grog or organic temper. The majority of forms are probably cooking pots, and rims may be plain, beaded, everted or T-shaped, sometimes with impressed decoration; 12th-13th century.

2.6. Chaff and flint tempered ware (OFTW)

Again, this fabric is represented by only one sherd. It differs from Fabric 2.5 in being handmade and containing greater quantities of organic temper than flint. It also contains some coarse chalk and medium sand. Probably a cooking pot. Prehistoric?

2.7. Grog tempered oxidised ware (GTOW)

A soft-hard fabric with powdery feel, wheel made, black interior and core, red externally, containing moderate inclusions of soft medium to coarse grey, white and red grog. Saxon.

Group 3 - Medieval and Late Medieval Wares

3.1. Fine Sandy Buff Ware (FSBW)

Wheel made; a hard fabric with harsh or rough feel. Abundant fine sandy inclusions with occasional coarse grog tempering and fine mica. The surfaces tend to be oxidised and vary from buff to brick red or even dark purple. The core is generally light grey. There is often clear to green glaze (sometimes mottled), usually on the upper half of the vessel, occasionally with white slip beneath the glaze. Decoration includes incised wavy and parallel horizontal lines, circular stamps in vertical bands, applied strips, and stabbing on handles. Most forms are jugs, some with frilled round-bottomed bases, and the occasional cooking pot (unglazed smoke blackened sherds). This is probably London-type ware of the 13th-15th centuries (Pearce et al 1985).

3.2. High Fired Buff Ware (HFBW)

Probably a slightly finer and higher fired version of Fabric 3.1. Sherds are very hard with smooth edges and surfaces. Inclusions are sparse fine sand and fine mica. Surfaces and margins are brick red and the core is grey. Occasionally the outer surface is dark purple grey (possibly fumed or colour-coated?). Generally unglazed,

but sometimes brown glaze has been applied. Forms include wheel made jugs with fluted round-bottomed bases and round-sectioned stabbed handles. Possibly London-type ware as above.

3.3. Fine Sandy Reduced Ware (FSRW)

A hard, rough fabric with common fine sandy inclusions, moderate very fine mica and occasional flint. The surfaces may be dark grey or buff (the outer surface is more commonly oxidised than the inner) but the margins and core are a fairly uniform grey. Forms include glazed jugs (light olive green, dark green, mottled brown) and unglazed cooking pots. Similar to Fabric 3.1. Probably 13th-15th century.

3.4. Medium Sandy White Ware (MSWW)

Only two sherds of this fabric were found. The fabric contains abundant fine sand and sparse medium angular haematite. The colour is a yellowish cream throughout, although the outer surface is slightly pink. Glaze is external only and light olive green in colour. One sherd had a diagonal stripe in red slip beneath the glaze. This is probably a version of the pale London-type ware and may be dated as early as the late 12th century (Pearce et al 1985).

3.5. Light-firing London Ware? (LFLW)

Sherds from six of the seven contexts which contain this fabric are likely to be from a single vessel, a light olive green glazed jug of a form common amongst the early London-type wares (Fig 45 No 21). The internal surface and margin varies from light red to yellowish cream (as Fabric 3.4), the core is light grey-buff, and the external margin and surface is light red but is sometimes reduced in small patches. The inclusions are moderate very fine sand, sparse very coarse chalk, and sparse very fine mica. The fabric is hard and rough, and vessels are wheel made. This jug may also be as early as the 12th century, although it is scattered through the destruction layers of the site.

3.6. Grog tempered sandy ware (GTSW)

Only two sherds were found. The fabric contained common fine sand, sparse coarse brick red grog and sparse coarse haematite. It was hard and rough, and was a uniform pink, although the internal surface was slightly buff. One sherd was either reduced or burnt, and unglazed. The other was glazed green/yellow (weathered?) on the external surface. Medieval-Late Medieval?

3.7. Limestone tempered sandy ware (LTSW)

A hard rough fabric with medium grey internal surface but otherwise in uniform light grey. Contained abundant fine sand, common very fine mica, sparse very coarse limestone, and very sparse coarse flint. Wheel made. Glazed green-brown externally. Medieval.

Group 4 - Surrey White Wares

Owing to the small size of most of the sherds it has not been possible to distinguish between kilns for this type of pottery. The fabrics are therefore arbitrary and may well include vessels from different kilns and periods. The divisions are based on the sand content of the sherd (fine, medium, coarse) and are fairly subjective. However, it has been possible to identify some vessels, which can be dated by their form and decoration.

4.1. Fine Surrey White Ware (SWW1/SPW2)

The fabric is generally very fine with no inclusions visible to the naked eye, and is hard and smooth. Colour is generally uniform throughout single sherds, but varies between sherds from off-white to pink, buff or grey (Fabric 4.1a or SWW1). Occasionally sherds are a darker almost salmon pink, and these have been classified as Fabric 4.1b (SPW2). All vessels are wheel made. Single sherds may be unglazed, glazed on one side only or all over, or accidentally splashed with glaze. Colours vary, and may be leaf green, olive green, yellow-green, yellow, brown, metallic brown, or mottled. The colour of the glaze obviously varies with the colour of the pot. Occasionally, particularly on bases and rims, two or three colours may be present. This fabric probably includes medieval vessels from Kingston and Chems, as well as the so-called Tudor Green Ware.

4.2. Medium Surrey White Ware (SWW2)

Sherds are hard and feel soapy. Inclusions are coarse sand forming c.20% of the matrix, and sparse very fine mica. The colour of this fabric is less uniform than 4.1a. The internal surface and margin are creamy white, the core is grey, and the external margin and surface are light grey or occasionally slightly oxidised. Glaze is generally external and is bright leaf green, and there may be applied strip decoration. This fabric is probably medieval and may be a slightly coarser version of Kingston-type ware.

4.3. Coarse Surrey White Ware (SWW4/SPW1)

This fabric is hard or very hard and feels rough or harsh. It contains common coarse sand in varying colours (clear, pink, brown), occasional very sparse coarse chalk, and sparse very fine mica. Colour varies from cream to buff, often with a light grey core (Fabric 4.3a or SWW4), and like Fabric 4.1 is also found in light salmon pink or red, again usually with a light grey core (Fabric 4.3b or SPW1). Sherds are often unglazed or splashed with glaze. When glazing is present it tends to be on one surface only (usually internal), and the colour varies from yellow-green to green. This description corresponds to that of medieval Coarse Border Ware (Pearce & Vince 1988), but from the forms it probably continued in use in the post-medieval period at Basing House.

Group 5 - ?Post-medieval Red Wares

5.1. Fine red earthenware (FREW)

A hard, smooth fabric of uniform brick red colour, although occasionally the surfaces may be slightly reduced (three sherds were almost completely reduced, but may have been burnt). Inclusions are sparse medium-coarse sand and occasional sparse very coarse chalk. Vessels are often glazed on one or both surfaces, usually with clear (red), brown (sometimes metallic), or occasionally a thick green glaze. Vessels include cups, bowls and dishes, 'fish dishes', and comb-decorated cups. The latter may be derived from Cove (Haslam 1975), and it is likely that much of this type of pottery found at Basing was from the kilns on the Surrey-Hampshire border. 17th century.

5.2. Medium Sandy Red Ware (MSRW)

This fabric is hard and smooth, and contains common medium-coarse sand and sparse very coarse chalk. The colour is generally brick red or buff on the surfaces and margins, with a brick red core. Some of the sherds in this fabric were from unglazed water pipes, but there were also a few green/brown glazed vessel sherds (usually in a deeper red than the pipes). Post-medieval.

5.3. Soft red ware (SRW)

The two small sherds of this fabric may be weathered tile fragments. The fabric is soft and harsh, and contains sparse fine-medium sand, sparse very coarse haematite, and sparse very fine mica.

5.4. Coarse sandy reduced ware (CSRW)

These sherds may also be tile fragments. The fabric is hard and rough, with brick red internal surface, margin and core, but dark grey external margin and surface. It contains abundant medium-coarse chalk.

5.5. Cistercian type ware (CTW)

A hard, smooth uniform dark red-purple fabric containing moderate amounts of fine sand. The most common form was a handled cup with applied white spot decoration and dark brown metallic glaze on both surfaces. Late 15th-16th century.

5.6. Spanish red ware (SprW)

Very hard fabric with powdery feel, containing sparse very coarse chalk and sparse very fine mica. The internal surface is bright red-orange, the margins and core are brick red, with a thin grey line between the core and the outer margin, and the exterior is a slightly reduced dark red. Wheel made, decorated with incised horizontal lines, unglazed. Post-Medieval?

Group 6 - Stoneware

German stonewares have been identified with reference to Jennings (1981), although it has been difficult to assign all of the sherds (particularly body sherds) to the correct production area.

6.1. Fine hard reduced ware (FHRW)

This fabric has very hard margins and surfaces but a soft core. It has a powdery feel. The margins and surfaces are dark grey or purple and the core is dark creamy buff or purple. It contains moderate very fine sand. Splashes of brown and green glaze are present. It seems that at least one of the sherds was intentionally very hard and may be proto-stoneware.

6.2. ?Siegburg stoneware (SGSW1)

Only one sherd could be attributed to this area. It was in a very hard creamy white-grey fabric, and was unglazed.

6.3. Cologne/Frechen stoneware (SGSW2)

Uniform light grey, very hard, smooth fabric: the fabric colour can vary. Sometimes the inner surface is coated with a pinky-buff slip, occasionally glazed. External glaze tends to be light metallic brown or pale buff/brown. Some pots have the mottled brown glaze usually associated with 'bellarmine' and a number of masks and badges from this type of vessel were present. Other vessels were mugs and jugs, sometimes with frilled bases. 16th century onwards.

6.4. Raeren/Aachen stoneware (SGSW3)

Generally uniform grey, very hard, smooth or soapy fabric; in one case it was a uniform salmon pink/orange. Glaze is clear (grey) or light brown/bronze. Where sherds were unglazed internally, they would only be assigned to this fabric if the form appeared to be one associated with this production area. Similar forms to those of Fabric 6.3 (except for 'bellarmine'). Late 15th/16th century.

6.5. Westerwald stoneware (SGSW4)

Very hard uniform creamy white fabric with light grey salt glaze externally, clear glaze internally, decorated with cobalt blue. 17th-20th century.

6.6. English stoneware (ESW)

No attempt was made to source this type of vessel, and all stonewares thought to be of English origin are included. Most are of uniform white or buff fabric and are glazed in an even light brown colour externally. Forms include tankards, 'soda water' bottles, and large bottles. 18th-20th centuries.

Group 7 - Cream Wares & Porcelain

Although it is recognised that porcelain is not really a pottery type, it has been included here partly because so few examples were recovered, and partly because it was the model for the later cream earthenwares.

7.1. Tin glazed ware (TGW)

A soft, powdery, cream fabric, with no obvious inclusions. Glazed white inside and out (although this has often been lost in patches), with painted blue, and sometimes orange and purple decoration. The most common form is the 'drug jar'. 17th century.

7.2. Glazed cream ware (GCW)

Uniform very hard cream fabric with no visible inclusions. Usually

glazed white, sometimes with transfer printed decoration in blue or black. Mostly cups, some plates. 18th-20th centuries.

7.3. Porcelain (PORC)

7.4. Staffordshire slip ware (SSW)

Very hard uniform creamy buff with no obvious inclusions. Decorated externally with white undercoat slip and dark brown combed trailed slip under almost glass-like yellow slip which also occurs on the plain interior. Late 17th-18th century.

Group 8 - Burnt Pottery

This category was utilised when it was not possible to identify a fabric.

Discussion - Gatehouse pottery by phase

Only very small amounts (52g) of Romano-British pottery (Group 1) were recovered, but these were spread over most of the site and occurred in both early and late contexts. They are presumably residual in every case.

Group 2 pottery, dated as Saxon/Early Medieval but possibly including a small amount of prehistoric material, was common in almost every phase. A total of 879g was collected. The largest quantities came from Phase Pre-I layers (313g). Fabric 2.5 (flint tempered coarse ware) was the most frequently occurring type in all periods.

Pottery dated to the Medieval/Late Medieval period (Group 3) occurred in every phase, although the largest quantity (617g) occurred in Phase II. It was also common in Phases IIIb and IV, and in V-VI, but in the latter was probably re-deposited material. This group was the second largest from the gatehouse (1480g).

The commonest pottery find from the gatehouse was Group 4, Surrey White Ware (1555g). Again, this occurred in every phase, but the most noticeable grouping is from Phase IIIa to Phase V-VI. During these phases the quantities gradually increase, but there is an obvious decline following the destruction of the House. Relatively large quantities of residual sherds occur in later contexts.

Red earthenwares (Group 5) do not appear on the site before Phase IIIb, and then only in very small quantities. They are not common as Surrey White Wares, except in contexts assigned to Phase V-VI/Late (which contained almost no white ware), where they dominate all other pottery finds. Some of the 17th century examples may be derived from the same kilns as the white Border Wares. It is possible that some sherds are from flower pots, which would explain their frequency during the later periods.

Stonewares (Group 6) are also very common in Phase V-VI/Late contexts. A Phase I find is presumably intrusive. There are reasonable quantities from Phase IIIb to Phase V, but as most examples appear to date from the 17th century it is not surprising that the greatest frequency is in later contexts. The total weight recovered was 990g.

A small quantity (273g) of cream earthenwares (Group 7, including Delft, transfer-printed wares and porcelain) of 17th century and later date was found in the gatehouse. Although one small sherd of

BASING HOUSE CITADEL GATEHOUSE

Pottery Groups by Phase (Weight in grams)

	Pre I	I	II	IIIa	IIIb	IV	V	V-VI	V-VI/Late	VI	Late	Unphased	Total
Group 1	18	0	0	0	15	0	0	3	9	0	4	3	52
Group 2	313	82	72	0	71	30	94	61	20	7	129	0	879
Group 3	2	15	617	23	157	187	14	305	20	7	98	35	1480
Group 4	21	3	13	65	144	201	221	393	23	135	281	55	1555
Group 5	0	0	0	0	10	73	74	111	361	8	309	56	1002
Group 6	0	48	0	0	62	56	55	21	304	3	289	152	990
Group 7	0	0	0	0	0	1	11	0	162	39	25	35	273
Burnt	0	0	0	0	0	32	14	137	0	0	48	0	231
Total	354	148	702	88	459	580	483	1031	899	199	1183	336	6462
% age	5.5%	2.3%	10.9%	1.4%	7.1%	9.0%	7.5%	16.0%	13.9%	3.1%	18.3%	5.2%	

Table 1: Citadel Gatehouse - Pottery groups by phase by weight.

tin glazed ware was found in a Phase IV context, the main concentration of such pottery was from Phase V onwards.

Unidentifiable burnt pottery was also found in small quantities (231g) in Phase IV and later contexts. Most examples came from a single context (118), a burnt area below a Phase VI wall.

Pre-Phase I – Phase I

Only 72 sherds (354g) were recovered from this phase. All were from the lowest layer (orange clay with flints) excavated in the west and central gatehouse areas. They range in date from late Roman through Pagan Saxon and Late Saxon to medieval. One burnt sherd from this layer was dated to the 17th century, and is clearly intrusive.

1. BH82 GHC/4 (761) ?Cooking pot rim with impressed decoration running diagonally across the top surface, Fabric 2.5. Medieval.
2. BH82 GHC/4 (761) ?Cooking pot rim, Fabric 2.5. Medieval.
3. BH83 GHW B2 L4 [6] (971) Rim (and six other sherds) with slight fingertip impressions, Fabric 2.1. Saxon.

Phase I

Sixteen sherds (148g) were recovered from eight Phase I contexts, dating from the 11th–14th centuries, but predominantly 12th–13th. The majority were from coarse unglazed pots (Fabric 2.5) and an unglazed jug (Fabric 3.1), but there were also three sherds from an olive green glazed jug or tripod pitcher (Fabric 3.3), one from a green glazed vessel with red-brown slip decoration (Fabric 3.4), and one of green glazed white ware (Fabric 4.2) with applied decoration. There was also a stoneware base (Fabric 6.4?), which was almost certainly intrusive, but has been included here. An interesting aspect of this group was that the three sherds from the green glazed vessel were from different features: two from the eastern post-holes (361, 364), and one from a feature between the two post-holes (372/3). If these finds do represent a tripod pitcher, this would date it to the 12th or early 13th centuries.

4. BH82 GHC +L1 [8] (=746?) Gully fill German salt-glazed stoneware frilled mug base in a light salmon pink/orange fabric, glazed light grey to orange-brown externally. Probably Raeren-type 15th century. Intrusive.

Phase II

Only six contexts belonging to this phase contained pottery (75 sherds, 702g). All the sherds are of Medieval or Late Medieval date. Fabric 3.1 is the most common type (87%), although most of the sherds belong to only two vessels, both green glazed jugs. Other fabrics from Group 3 (Fabrics 3.3, 3.4) are also present in small amounts, as are Surrey White Wares (4.2 and 4.3a). Fabric 2.5 is also present (10%).

5. BH80 129 Rim fragment of unglazed jar, Fabric 2.5. Medieval.
6. BH82 +L1 [28] (Flint-lined pit grey layer = 769) Part of a pear-shaped jug, Fabric 3.1. Dull indeterminate iron-green glaze, decorated with horizontal grooves. Handle square section with a longitudinal groove. Pierced with stick end jabs, in the West Sussex ware tradition, or possibly London-type Ware. Late medieval.
7. BH80 160 Partially reconstructed jug (lower half) in Fabric 3.1, covered outside with a white slip and subsequently decorated with a double ring stamp. Glazed over with a clear glaze containing copper chips. Probably London-type Ware. Medieval.

Phase II-III

Only one context (141) belonging to this phase contained sherds, most of which were green glazed Surrey White Ware (Fabrics 4.1a and 4.2). There was also a sherd in Fabric 3.1. Most of the group has been dated to the late 15th century.

Phase IIIa

Contexts assigned to this phase contained pottery dating from the 13th to 16th centuries. Most were from the chalk entrance passage or the layers directly above it, and therefore date the use of this surface (15th/16th century). One context represents the footings of the gatehouse walls, and suggests a construction date in the late 14th/15th century. Again, most of the sherds are green glazed Surrey White Ware (Fabrics 4.1a, 4.3a and 4.3b) dating from the 13th to 15th centuries, and there was also one sherd of Fabric 3.2.

8. BH80 352 Three sherds from a 'Tudor Green' iron glazed cup, Fabric 4.1a. 15th century.

Phase IIIb

Eight contexts contained 66 sherds (426g). These included Romano-British grey wares (3.5%), Saxon/early medieval coarse wares (Fabrics 2.3 and 2.5, 9%), and Post-Medieval red wares (Fabrics 5.2 and 5.4, 2.3%). The majority of sherds (37%) were of medieval or late medieval date (Fabrics 3.1–3.3, 3.5), or Surrey White Ware Fabrics 4.1a-b and 4.3a (34%). There were also a few pieces of Cologne/Frechen and Raeren/Aachen stoneware.

9. BH81 557 Base of stoneware tankard, brown glazed all over, grey fabric. Raeren/Aachen? 15th/16th century.

Phase III-IV

Sherds of late medieval to 16th century date. One context (from the west rampart building) tentatively assigned to this phase contained almost equal quantities of Fabrics 3.1 and 3.3, and a small amount of Cistercian-type ware (Fabric 5.5). The total sherd weight was 81g.

10. BH83 RBW/3 [3] (954?) The base of a small cup or jug. Dark red earthenware with dark grey core (Fabric 3.1?) covered inside and splashed outside with olive green glaze. The vessel was cut from the wheel with a wire using a sawing motion. A 'step' on the inside of the vessel is a feature seen on pots made in Surrey in the 16th century.

11. BH83 RBW/3 [3] & [7] (954?) Cup in Cistercian-type Ware. A very fine earthenware of dark red colour with an all over metallic brown glaze filled with an iron rich compound. Decorated externally under the glaze with a white slip dot. Small ovoid section handle. Late 16th century.

Phase IV

Twenty-seven contexts contained pottery (580g), dating from the late 13th to the ?17th century. A few sherds (29%) were of late medieval or earlier date, but the majority were white (40%) and red wares (13%) and salt-glazed stonewares (11%) of the 15th–17th centuries. There was one sherd of tin glazed ware.

12. BH78 9 Rim of small jar in medium sandy red ware (Fabric 5.2) with olive green glaze. 16th/17th century.
13. BH81 398 Coarse cooking pot rim, Fabric 2.5. 13th/14th century.
14. BH81 501/516 Rim from a large unglazed storage jar. Fabric 4.3b. Late medieval.
15. BH83 TER8 (=968) Rim of large ?storage jar in sandy buff fabric with dark grey core. Late Medieval.

Phase V

Although this phase includes the siege period and the demolition of Basing House, it is represented by only 46 sherds (483g). The majority of these are dated to the 16th century and very few stonewares are present. A number of Saxon and medieval sherds suggest infilling of the gatehouse area with soil from elsewhere in or around the Citadel.

16. BH79 123 Plain tin glazed earthenware base. ?17th century.
17. BH82 +L1 F1 [4] & [5] (=547?) Coarse black flint tempered rim, Fabric 2.5. Medieval.
18. BH82 +L1 F1 [6] (=547?) Coarse rim of ?bowl in patchy oxidised Fabric 2.5. Medieval.

Phase V-VI

This phase, like Phase V, includes clearance debris following the destruction of the gatehouse, and has a similar assemblage to the top layers of the ditch. Five contexts contained 153 sherds (1031g), ranging from Romano-British to 17th century. The majority of sherds were 17th century Surrey White Wares.

19. BH78 17 Bifid rim, unglazed. Fabric 4.3b. 15th/16th century.
20. BH83 GHW1 [8] (=17?) Handmade rim in buff fabric, flint tempered. Fabric 2.5. Saxon?
21. BH83 GHW1 [8] (=17?) Collared rim jug with rilled neck (possibly extending further than illustrated), splashed with light olive green glaze. Fabric 3.5. Pale London-type ware? 12th–13th century. Also present in Contexts 8 and 902 (handle).

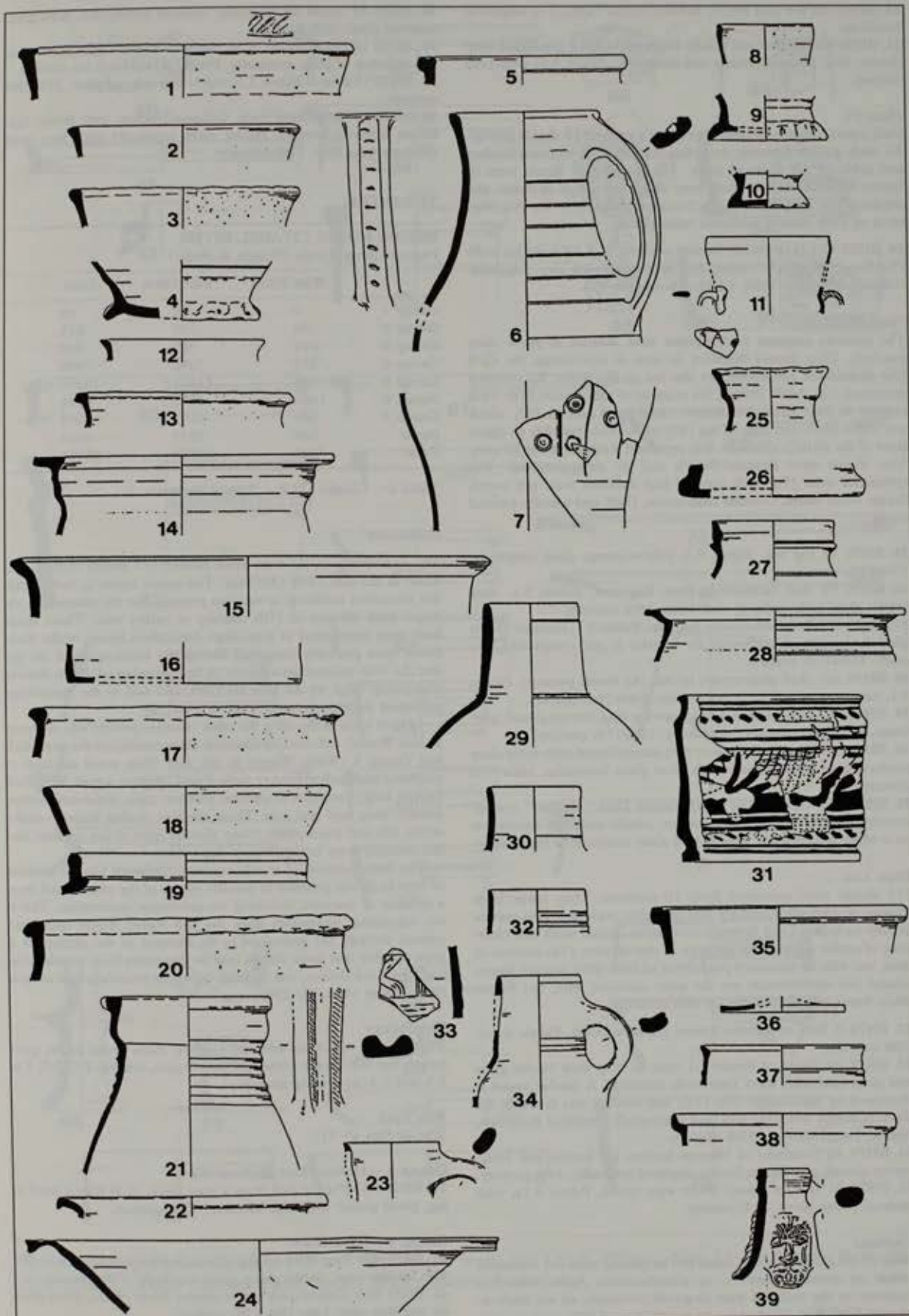


Fig 45 Basing House Citadel. Pottery. Nos 1-39 from the Gatehouse, Phase 1-Late & Unphased, Scale 1:4.

22. BH83 GHW1 [20] (=17?) Everted rim in Fabric 3.3, unglazed. Medieval.
23. BH80 96/118 Rim and handle fragment of black glazed red ware (burnt) jug. Glaze internally and externally. Fabric 5.5? 16th/17th century.

Phase VI

Only seven contexts contained pottery, a total of 18 sherds (199g). All were garden features, including the cobbled entrance surface and some of the diagonal walls. The majority of sherds were of Surrey White Ware, but there were also a few pieces of Saxon and medieval pot, Red Ware, Delft, Stoneware, and there was one fragment of 19th century porcelain toilet piping.

24. BH82 +L1 [11] (=615) (brown soil layer S of 1690 garden wall) Dish/bowl rim in light creamy buff fabric with pink core, unglazed. Fabric 4.3b? 1450-1550. Cf Moorhouse No 115.

Phase V/VII/Late

The contexts assigned to this phase were difficult to place more precisely. They should therefore be seen as post-dating the Civil War destruction and sometimes also the garden phase. Six contexts contained 106 sherds (899g), the majority of which were 17th-18th century in date. Most (86 sherds) came from context 167, which was at the north-east edge of the 1979 excavation (possibly an upper layer of the ditch?), although they represent a maximum of 20 pots. Two sherds were Romano-British and 20 were medieval. The remainder were 17th-19th century and included local red wares, Surrey white wares, German stonewares, Delft and transfer-printed wares.

25. BH78 72 Jug rim, Fabric 3.1, yellow-orange glaze externally. 13th/14th century.
26. BH78 72 Red earthenware base fragment, Fabric 5.1, dark brown glaze both surfaces, well worn. 18th century.
27. BH79 167 Red earthenware jug rim, Fabric 5.1, metallic brown glaze both surfaces (although the interior is not completely covered). 16th/17th century.
28. BH79 167. Red earthenware jar rim (42 sherds present), Fabric 5.1, brown-green partial internal glaze. 16th/17th century.
29. BH79 167 Cologne/Frechen stoneware jug, brown glazed, grey fabric, red-brown unglazed internally. 16th/17th century.
30. BH79 167 Raeren stoneware rim, glazed brown with some clear patches, grey fabric, brown with clear glaze internally. 16th/17th century.
31. BH79 167 One-third of a polychrome Delft "drug jar" (reconstructed from 13 sherds) with orange, purple and blue decoration on a white background, creamy-buff glaze internally. 17th century.

Phase Late

113 sherds were recovered from 19 contexts. They range from Roman to 19th/20th century and probably represent post-garden activity including Lord Bolton's excavations, canal work and clearance of earlier layers. The majority of sherds were 17th century or later, but with an increased proportion of 18th-20th century wares. Glazed red earthenwares are the most common type, but Surrey white wares and stonewares are also common.

32. BH78 2 Rim of mottled brown glazed tankard, Fabric 4.1a?, 18th century.
33. BH78 69 Sherd of Fabric 5.1 with all over dark brown glaze and decorated with wavy four-tooth combing. A similar vessel is illustrated by Moorhouse (No 175), and another was found in the ditch (Context BH80/81 458, not illustrated). Probably from Ash, Surrey. Late 16th/early 17th century.
34. BH79 89 Fragment of Raeren/Aachen jug handle and body, brown glazed, grey fabric, brown unglazed internally. 16th century.
35. BH79 91 Rim of Surrey white ware vessel, Fabric 4.1a, with internal yellow glaze. 17th century.

Unphased

Most of the contexts which could not be phased were not recorded, either on context sheets or on plans/sections. Apart from two contexts on the east and west ringwork terminals, all are likely to be post-Civil War. Most of the 36 sherds were of 17th century date, but a few were earlier and one was 18th century.

36. BH78 11 Small lid fragment, reduced Fabric 5.1, dark green external glaze. 16th century.
37. BH78 12 Small pipkin or jar rim with internal light green glaze and splashes of glaze externally. Fabric 4.1a. 16th/17th century.
38. BH78 15 Rim of Fabric 5.1, red-brown internal glaze. 17th/18th century.
39. BH78 15 Bellarmine neck, Cologne/Frechen, grey fabric, light brown interior, mottled brown glaze externally with face mask (Holmes type VII). 17th century.

THE DITCH

BASING HOUSE CITADEL DITCH

Pottery Group Totals (Weight in grams)

	West Ditch	East Ditch	Total
Group 1	0	28	28
Group 2	80	735	815
Group 3	174	309	483
Group 4	415	7090	7505
Group 5	1835	11471	13306
Group 6	1686	4545	6231
Group 7	342	2653	2995
Burnt	528	3875	4403
Total	5060	30706	35766

Table 2: Citadel Ditch - Pottery groups.

Introduction

The excavations in the west ditch yielded 333 sherds (5060g) and those in the east 1433 (30706g). The upper layers in both localities contained medieval to modern pottery, but the material in the lower ditch fill was of 17th century or earlier date. These layers have been interpreted as post-siege destruction layers, whilst those above were probably deposited during the landscaping of the site and the 19th century excavations. A large number of sherds deserve illustration (Figs 46-48 Nos 40-129), and add to the assemblage published by Moorhouse (1970).

In both areas of the ditch the most common pottery was of Group 5 (Red Wares), followed by Group 6 (Stonewares) in the west ditch and Group 4 (White Wares) in the east. Only small amounts of medieval and earlier pottery were found. Forms, where identified, include large quantities of pipkins, platters, cups, stoneware bottles, dishes, 'drug jars' and jugs. There are also chafing dishes, candlesticks, lids and water pipes. Many showed signs of fire damage, and the majority were broken before deposition.

The large number of sherds represents a much smaller number of vessels. It was possible to identify pieces of the same vessel from a number of contexts, including the gatehouse excavations. This is not surprising, as rubbish from the Old House would have been carried through the gatehouse to be dumped in the ditches. It is even possible that some sherds may be fragments from vessels excavated by Lord Bolton, one example being the porcelain vase or ewer (Moorhouse 1970, No 294).

The Fabrics

The majority of fabrics were the same as those found in the gatehouse, but there were some additional types, namely 2.7, 3.7, 5.6, 6.5 and 7.4 (see listing above).

West Ditch

(Fig 46 Nos 40-51)

Group 3 - Medieval/Late Medieval Wares

40. BH79 161 Pegged foot from a grey fabric (3.3) tripod bowl or jug, green glazed with dark blotches. 13th century.

Group 4 - White Wares

41. BH81 409 Rim of lid-seated pipkin in sandy pink fabric (4.3b) with creamy core, partial green glaze externally. 15th century.
42. BH81 406. Costrel neck in fine creamy fabric (4.1a), green glaze on one side only. Late 16th/17th century.

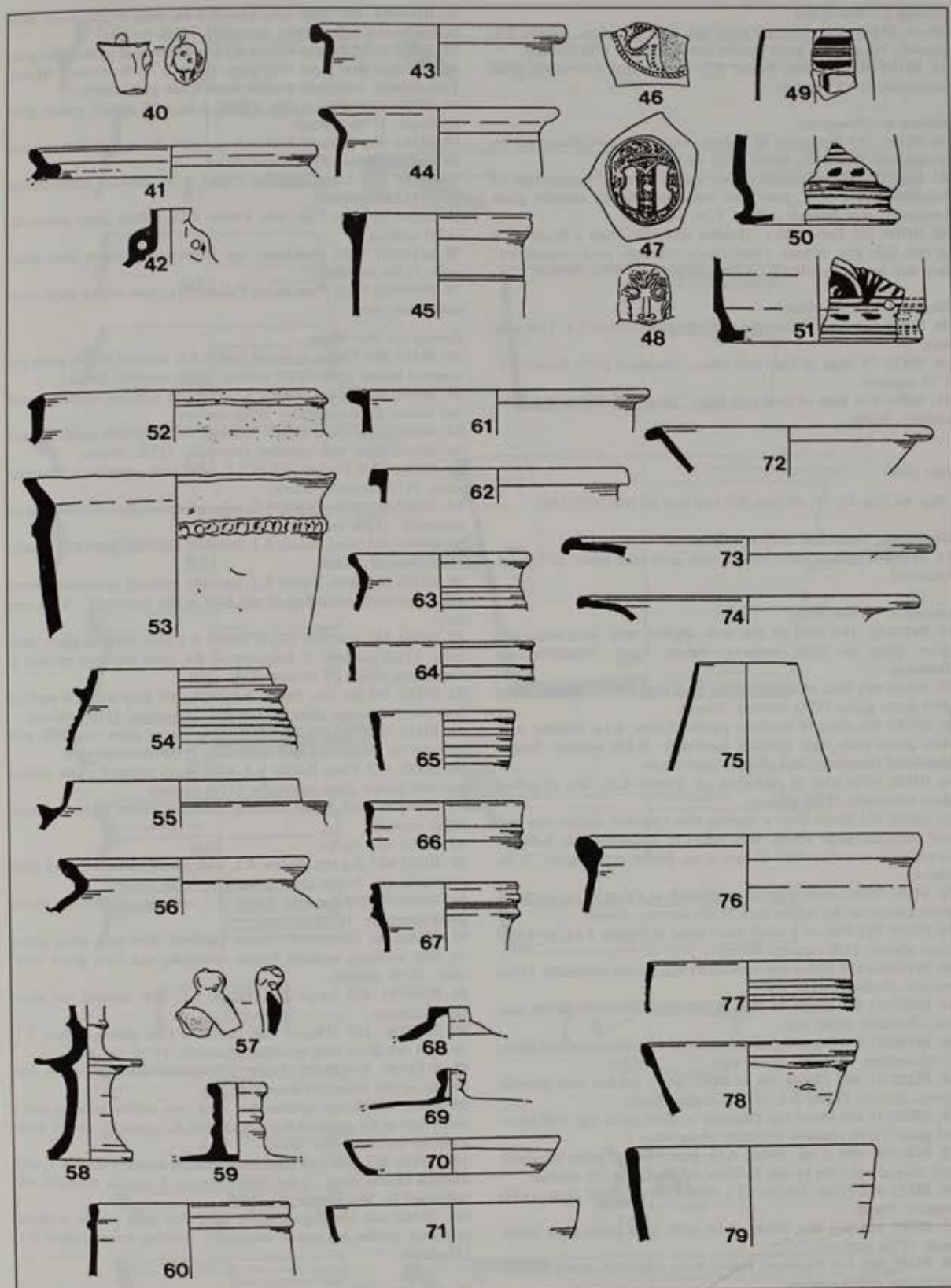


Fig 46 Basing House Citadel. Pottery. Nos 40-51 from the Ditch (West); Nos 52-79 Pottery from the Ditch (East), Coarse Medieval and Surrey White Wares, Scale 1:4.

Group 5 – Red Wares

- 43–44. BH80 402 Two reduced red ware jar rims, Fabric 5.1, possibly burnt, with green-brown internal glaze. 17th century.
45. BH80 402 Jar rim, Fabric 5.1, with partial red-brown glaze externally. ?17th century.

Group 6 – Stonewares

46. BH80 163 Fragment of rosette, similar to one illustrated by Moorhouse (No 280), burnt. 17th century.
47. BH80 402 Oval medallion showing the Arms of Amsterdam (cf Moorhouse No 283), light grey stoneware, brown mottled glaze externally, grey internal surface. 17th century.
48. BH80 402 Part of face (Holmes type III?) from a bottle neck in very light grey (almost white) fabric with light pink external surface and brown mottled glaze externally. Early 17th century.

Group 7 – Cream Wares

49. BH80 402 Rim of blue and white tankard, Fabric 7.1. 17th century?
50. BH78 70 Base of blue and white "ointment pot", Fabric 7.1. 17th century.
51. BH80 402 Base of blue and white "drug jar", Fabric 7.1. 17th century. Burnt.

East Ditch

(Figs 46 Nos 52–79, 47 Nos 80–104 and 48 Nos 105–129)

Group 2 – Saxon and Early Medieval

52. BH80/81 458 Coarse sandy light grey-buff fabric (2.5) rim. Medieval.

Group 4 – White Wares

53. BH80/81 460 Rim of jar with applied strip decoration and green glaze on both surfaces, Fabric 4.1a?. ?Medieval/Late Medieval.
54. BH82 461 Rim of small pipkin, light grey Fabric 4.1a, internal olive green glaze. ?17th century. ?Burnt.
55. BH82 461 Rim of medium pipkin, Fabric 4.1a, internal light olive green glaze with splashes externally. ?17th century. Smoke blackened externally, and possibly also burnt.
56. BH83 0501 Rim of pipkin or jar, Fabric 4.3b, line of yellow glaze externally. ?17th century.
57. BH82 461 Knob from a chafing dish (another similar was present from the same vessel) with edges to a hole directly below it (apparently star-shaped?), Fabric 4.1a, bright green glaze. ?17th century.
58. BH83 0530 Lower part of candlestick in Fabric 4.1a, probably green glazed on the upper half. ?17th century. Burnt.
59. BH82 461 Part of a small hand lamp in Fabric 4.1a, probably green glazed. 17th century. Burnt.
60. BH80/81 456 Burnt rim from jar or jug, glazed externally. ?17th century. Probably white ware.
61. BH80/81 460 Burnt jar, fine, ?green glaze internally. ?17th century. Probably white ware.
62. BH80/81 460 Burnt square section rim with internal green glaze. ?17th century. Probably white ware.
63. BH80/81 460 Flared rim of small jar or ?pipkin with internal ?green glaze in Fabric 4.1. ?17th century. Burnt.
64. BH80/81 460 Burnt rim fragment of small jar or cup with internal glaze. ?17th century. Probably white ware.
65. BH80/81 460 ?Cup, Fabric 4.1a, glazed bright green internally and olive green with brown blotches externally. ?17th century.
66. BH82 461 ?Cup, Fabric 4.1a, with internal green glaze. ?17th century. Burnt.
67. BH82 461 Jug rim, Fabric 4.1a, with olive green glaze externally. ?17th century.
68. BH82 461 Lid fragment, Fabric 4.1a, unglazed, partly smoke-blackened. ?17th century.
69. BH82 461 Lid fragment, Fabric 4.1a, unglazed, smoke blackened especially on the inner surface. ?17th century.
70. BH80/81 460 ?Dish/lid, Fabric 4.1a, with internal light green glaze extending over rim to incised line and on base. ?17th century.
71. BH80/81 460 ?Dish/lid, Fabric 4.1a, with internal glaze?, smoke blackened. ?17th century. ?Burnt.

72. BH80/81 460 Dish rim, Fabric 4.1a, with bright green glaze internally and yellow glaze externally. ?17th century.

73. BH82 0514 Platter, Fabric 4.1a, with internal olive green glaze and external clear glaze with green patches. ?17th century. ?Burnt. This context contained at least three other platter rims.

74. BH83 0530 Platter rim, Fabric 4.1a, with partial yellow glaze internally. ?17th century.

75. BH82 461 ?Urinal, Fabric 4.1a, with dense dark brown glaze on both surfaces. ?17th/18th century.

76. BH82 461 Large ?pipkin, Fabric 4.3b, internal green-orange glaze. ?17th century.

77. BH80/81 1001 Cup rim, Fabric 4.1a, yellow glaze internally. ?17th century.

78. BH80/81 1001 Dish/bowl rim, Fabric 4.1a, yellow glaze internally. ?17th century.

79. BH80/81 1001 Plain bowl, Fabric 4.1a, with yellow glaze internally. Not dated.

Group 5 – Red Wares

80. BH82 462 Pipkin, reduced Fabric 5.1, internal brown glaze and external brown glaze in lid seating. ?17th century. Burnt.

81. BH82 461 Pipkin, Fabric 5.1, reduced external surface, partial red brown glaze internally. ?17th century.

82. BH82 461 Pipkin, Fabric 5.1, with reduced outer surface, internal brown glaze with splashes externally. ?17th century.

83. BH82 0502 Pipkin, Fabric 5.1, with dark green-brown internal glaze. ?17th century. Burnt.

84. BH82 461 Rim, Fabric 5.1, reduced externally, red-brown glaze internally. ?17th century.

85. BH82 461 Rim, Fabric 5.1, reduced surfaces, glazed internally. ?17th century. Burnt.

86. BH82 461 Rim, Fabric 5.1, partially reduced externally, brown glaze internally extending to top half of rim externally. ?17th century.

87. BH82 461 Carvetto rim in Fabric 5.1 with decayed glaze internally. ?17th century. A fragment of the same rim was present in Gatehouse Phase IV context 532.

88. BH82 461 Jar rim, Fabric 5.1, with dark grey reduced surfaces and internal brown glaze on rim and lid seating. ?17th century.

89. BH82 0502 Jar rim, Fabric 5.1, partial red glaze externally with splashes on lid seating and internally. ?17th century.

90. BH82 461 Cup, Fabric 5.1, with shiny reduced outer surface and red brown glaze internally. ?17th century.

91. BH80/81 458 Small lid/dish, reduced Fabric 5.1, unglazed. ?17th century.

92. BH82 461 As 91.

93. BH82 461 Jug rim, Fabric 5.1, with partial metallic brown glaze externally and brown glaze internally. ?17th century.

94. BH80/81 458 Jug rim, Fabric 5.1, with partial metallic brown glaze internally. ?17th century.

95. BH82 461 Dish/bowl, Fabric 5.1 with dark grey core, glazed on both surfaces, metallic brown externally and olive green internally. ?17th century.

96. BH80/81 452 Large dish, Fabric 5.1, with internal red glaze. ?17th century.

97. BH80/81 453 ?Platter with handle ("Fish dish"), Fabric 5.1, internal red glaze with splashes externally. ?17th century.

98. BH80/81 454 Bowl, Fabric 5.1, glazed dark brown all over except on the base. ?18th century.

99. BH82 461 Large ?garden pot with two stubby handles and a small hole at the angle of the base, Fabric 5.2, partially glazed internally on the base. Not dated.

100. BH82 461 Rim and knob from chafing dish in Fabric 5.1, with internal brown glaze. ?Late 16th century. A similar example was published by Moorhouse (No 154).

101. BH82 461 Dark grey fabric dish with dark purple surfaces, unglazed, smoke blackened externally. Possibly burnt Fabric 5.1. ?Medieval.

'Metropolitan' Slipwares

102. BH82 461 Handled cup/bowl, Fabric 5.1, with wavy line decoration around the rim and decoration on the handle and internally, covered with red brown glaze. Early 17th century (cf Moorhouse No 184).

103. BH82 461 Pedestal base in Fabric 5.1 with continuous decoration and covered in red brown glaze, except on the base. The

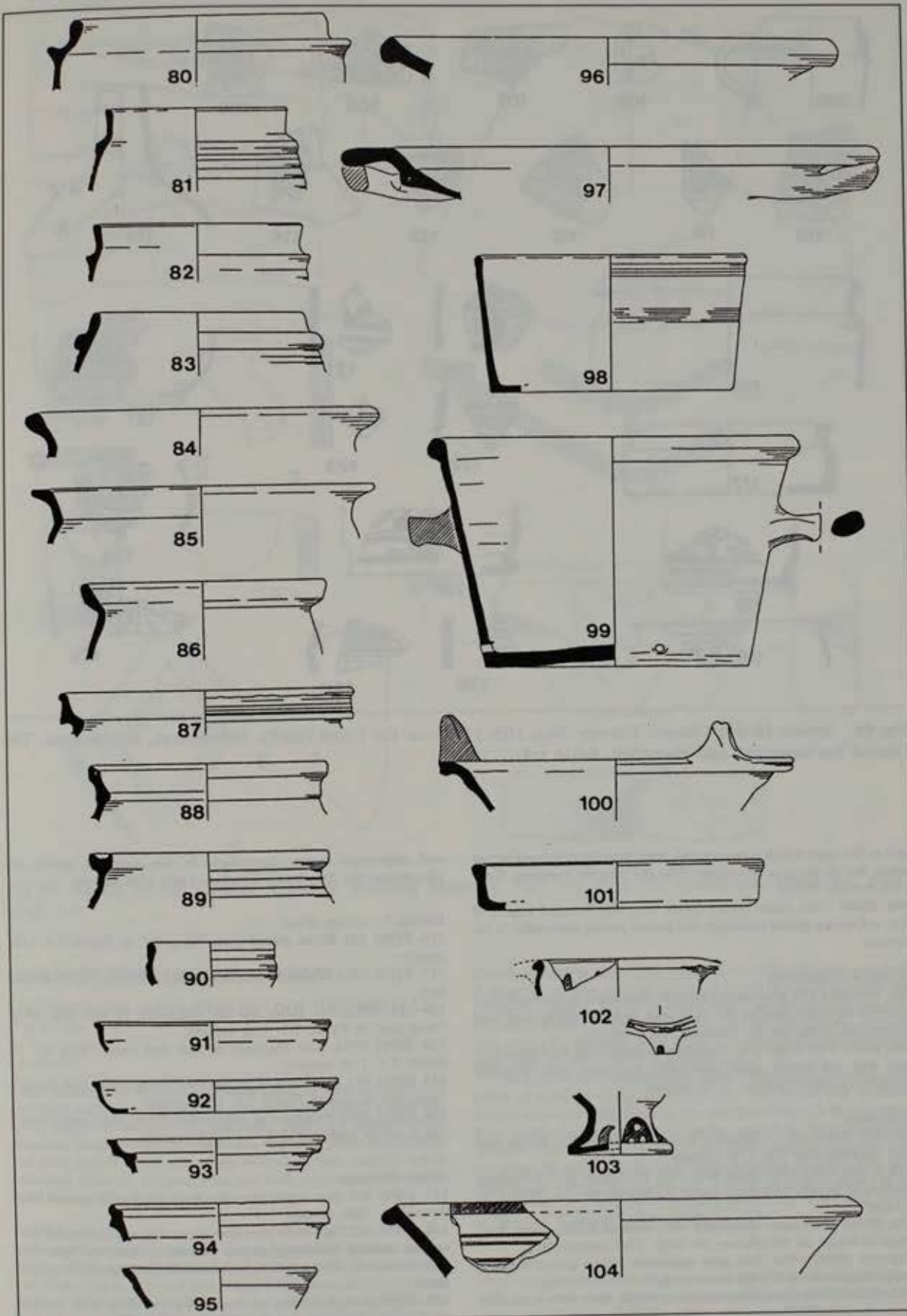


Fig 47 Basing House Citadel. Pottery. Nos 80-104 from the Ditch (East), Red Wares and Slip Wares, Scale 1:4.

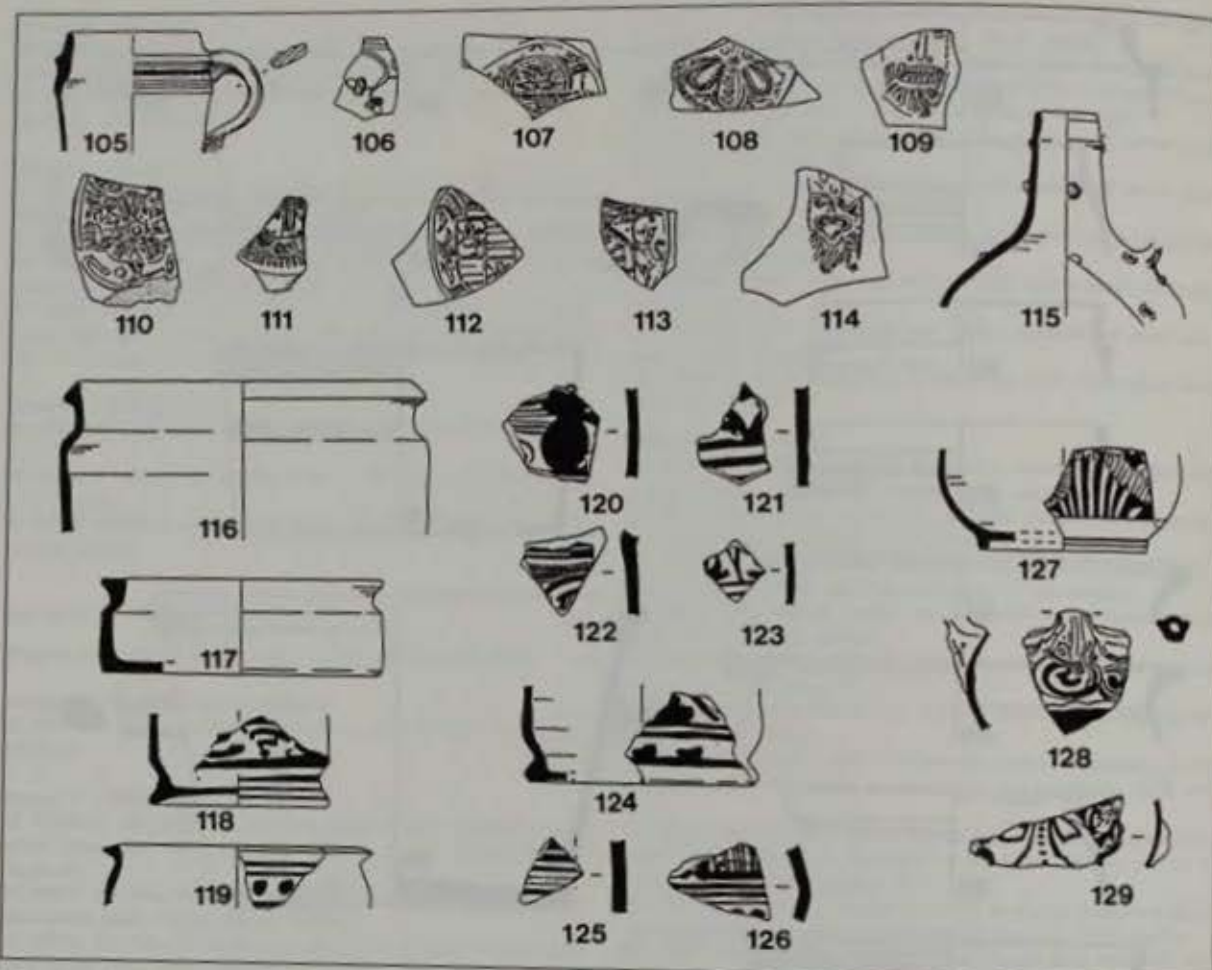


Fig 48 Basing House Citadel. Pottery. Nos 105-129 from the Ditch (East), Stonewares, Bellarmine, Tin Glazed Earthenwares and Porcelain, Scale 1:4.

hole in the base, which is not central, must have been formed before firing, but its purpose is unclear. The pot may be a waster. Early 17th century. Burnt.

104. BH82 0502 Large bowl, Fabric 5.1, with internal stripes of slip, red brown glaze internally and partial glazing externally. ?17th century.

Group 6 - Stonewares

105. BH80/81 458 Westerwald jug with clear glaze all over and decorated with cobalt blue on the rilled area, and leaf-like applied decoration below the handle. German. ?18th century.

106. BH82 0502 Light grey stoneware fragment with buff inner surface and red brown glaze externally, decorated with moulded ?acorns. Cologne/Frechen. ?17th century.

Bellarmines

107-109. BH82 461 Fragments of bellarmine badge, rosette and face (Holmes type V7). 17th century.

110. BH82 0502 Grey stoneware with clear glaze and infrequent patches of brown, with floral badge (cf Moorhouse No 261). 17th century.

111. BH82 0515 Grey stoneware with external brown glaze, fragment of badge (cf Moorhouse No 265). 17th century.

112-113. BH82 0502 Two grey stoneware brown glazed heraldic badge fragments (113 pink inner surface). 17th century.

114. BH82 0502 Grey fabric stoneware with dark brown mottled glaze, face mask (Holmes type VIII). ?English, 1640-80.

115. BH82 461 Grey fabric stoneware with mottled brown glaze

and impressed stamp decoration in the form of spirals (cf Moorhouse No 270, base). Frechen. Early 17th century.

Group 7 - Cream Wares

116. BH82 461 White glazed plain "drug jar" in Fabric 7.1. 17th century.

117. BH82 0502 White glazed plain ?bowl in Fabric 7.1. 17th century.

118-123. BH82 461 Base, rim and fragments of blue and white "drug jars" in Fabric 7.1. 17th century.

124. BH82 0502 Base fragment of blue and white "drug jar" in Fabric 7.1. 17th century.

125. BH82 461 Fragment of polychrome (blue, white and orange) "drug jar" in pinkish Fabric 7.1. 17th century.

126. BH82 0502 Fragment of polychrome (blue, white and orange) "drug jar" in pinkish Fabric 7.1. 17th century.

Chinese Porcelain

127. BH82 461 Fine white porcelain base sherd with painted blue decoration. 16th century.

128. BH82 462 Fine white porcelain sherd with applied tendril decoration around ?handle/spout and painted in dark and light blue from a vase or ewer (cf Moorhouse No 294). 16th-17th century. Burnt.

129. BH82 462 Fragment of fine white porcelain with applied tendrils and blue painted decoration, possibly from the same or similar vessel to 128. 16th-17th century.

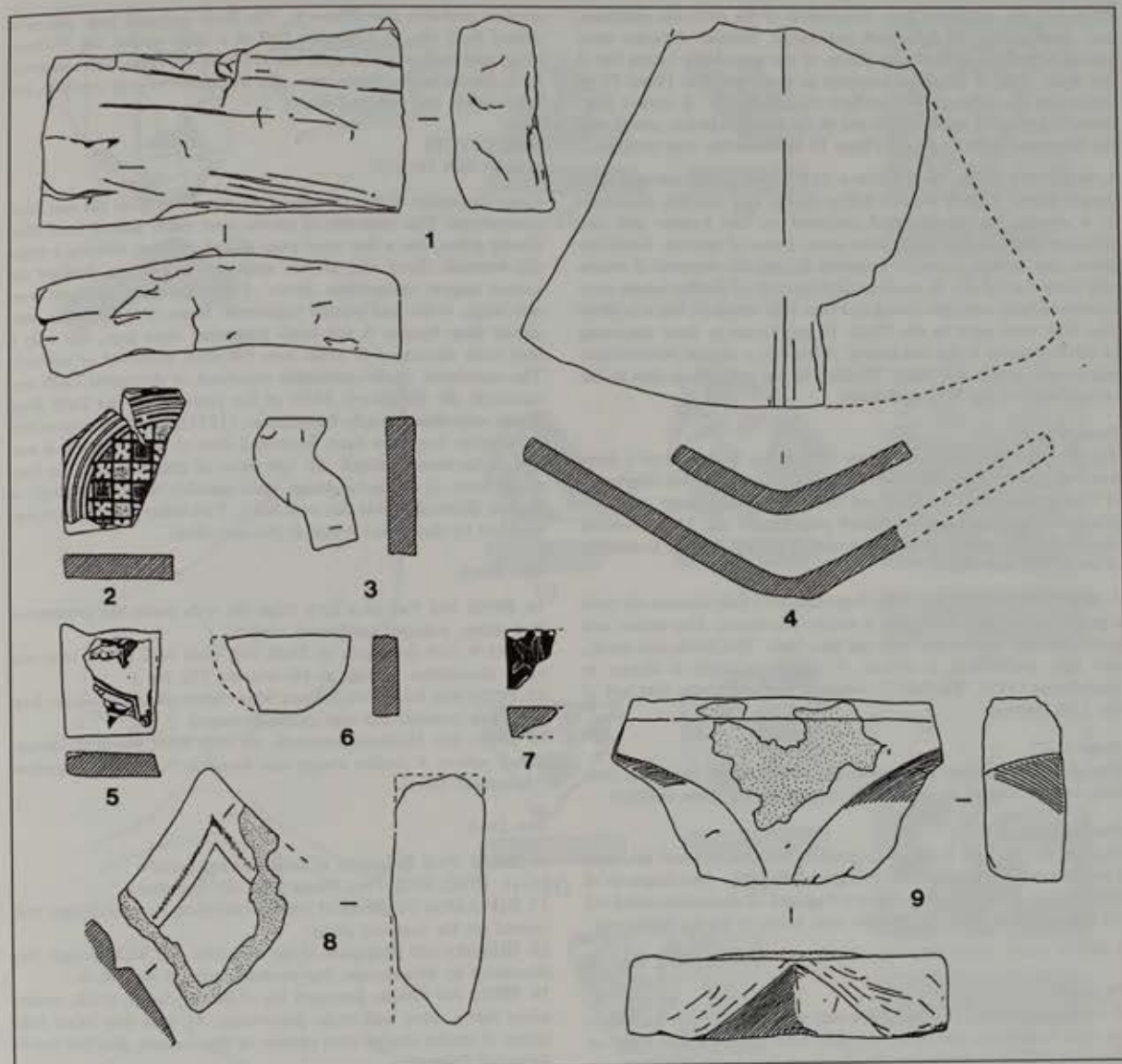


Fig 49 Basing House Citadel. Ceramic Building Material. Nos 1-9 from the Gatehouse, Phase 4 - Late, Scale 1:4.

CERAMIC BUILDING MATERIAL

GATEHOUSE AND RINGWORK TERMINALS

(Fig 49 Nos 1-9)

Introduction

Large quantities of tile and brick were found in both the gatehouse and ditch excavations. In general, the excavation policy was to collect a sample of the brick/tile fragments from each context which contained them. In practice this means that edge pieces and pierced roof tiles form a major part of the collection, and contexts which contained plain tile fragments are not well represented. All decorated floor and wall tile fragments were kept.

Pre-Phase IV

Little ceramic building material comes from early contexts. A few abraded fragments were found below the floor of the Phase II building (Phase Pre-I), some of which may be Roman, and in the flint-lined pit (Phase II). Two fragments of red tile were found in the chalk passage of Phase IIIa and two groups of tiles were kept from the IIIb layer in the west gatehouse (all roof and floor tiles, some

glazed, of varying fabric and date, and including Roman tegulae). A fragment of blue vitrified brick was found in one of the drainage gullies thought to belong to Phase IIIb, and the IIIb-IV layer on the west rampart contained a curved roof tile. Finally, the foundation trench for the north-west tower (IV) contained a roof tile fragment with the impression of a dog's paw.

This limited haul suggests that the site was cleared between each phase of building on the gatehouse site, and rubble was removed for use elsewhere. Alternatively, the earlier buildings (I-II) may have been constructed principally of timber and daub (large quantities of daub were found in the fill of the Phase II flint-lined pit) and the phase III gatehouse may have been primarily of stone. The earliest use of roofing tile on this site is likely to date to Phase II or possibly III. The first use of brick in Hampshire is thought to be at Bishop's Waltham Palace, dating to 1499.

Phase IV

Most brick/tile from this phase came from the gatehouse passage, in the layers beneath the cobbles. Three fragments of plain glazed (green and brown) floor tile and a complete vitrified brick were kept. Most of the relevant contexts contained broken or crushed

brick and tile, resulting from demolition of the previous structure, and construction of the brick gatehouse. Similar deposits were probably present beneath the floors of the gatehouse rooms but it has been difficult to assign contexts in these areas to Phase IV as there was no obvious floor surface on either side. A corner fragment of a vitrified brick was found in the east gatehouse, and a roof tile fragment came from the Phase IV layer on the east rampart.

1. BH81 501 Large brick (c220 x 115 x 60mm) in reduced dark purple fabric, slightly twisted before firing, and possibly discarded as a waster. Vitrification had occurred on one header and one stretcher surface, and there were some traces of mortar. Striations across one surface probably occurred during the removal of excess clay from the mould. A number of fragments of similar bricks were recovered from contexts dating to Phase IIIb onwards, but it is likely that they were used in the Phase IV gatehouse to form diapering or other patterns in the brickwork. A brick in a similar twisted state was found in the east ditch. Vitrified bricks are still in situ in the curtain wall of the Walled Garden.

Phase V

The material retained from Phase V contexts consisted of a fragment of grey roof tile, a fragment of glazed floor tile, four fragments of blue glazed/burnt brick, a red half brick with a large dog paw print, and two fragments of a Delft polychrome tile. Most contexts assigned to this phase contained building rubble, usually consisting of brick, tile and chalk.

2. BH79 120 (spoil heap) Two fragments of a polychrome tile with a geometric design. The glaze is smoke blackened. The yellow and green painted squares run over the blue lines. The fabric was sandy, and light pinky buff in colour. A similar example is shown in Moorhouse (1971, Tile No 7), where it is dated to the first half of the 17th century.

Phase V-VI

Five pierced fragments of red roof tile were retained from one context, and 16 fragments of roof tile (some glazed) from another.

Phase V/VII/Late

Most of the tile kept from these contexts was flat red roof tile, with a few pieces of curved roof tile and glazed floor tile. One fragment of Delft, minus glaze, was found, and a fragment of shaped/moulded red tile was also kept. Some fragments were burnt or smoke blackened.

3. BH78 50/52 Small shaped/moulded red tile fragment.

Phase VI

A small fragment of vitrified brick and a curved roof tile with mortar were kept from one of the roughly built garden phase walls on the west side. A polychrome tile fragment was recovered from the rubble wall at the north end of the west gatehouse. A concave valley tile, a convex ridge tile and a glazed tile were found in the brown soil south of the curved garden wall.

4. BH82 +L1 (S. of 1690 Wall) (=615) Part of trapezoid concave valley tile in red fabric with mortar on underside.

5. BH83 GHW W13 (=65/68) A fragment of Delft polychrome tile with very blurred design, apparently similar to that published in Moorhouse (Tile No 2). Later 16th century.

Phase Late

Contexts of this phase also contained mostly flat red roof tile, plain glazed floor and roof tile and purple fabric vitrified bricks, as well as some grey fabric tiles. Other finds included another shaped tile, two moulded bricks, fragments of polychrome tiles and two fragments of Medieval encaustic tile. Much of this material was in the topsoil or in collapse from the ramparts.

6. BH78 3 Fragment of (semi-) circular red tile.

7. BH79 117 Corner fragment of a polychrome tile (blue, orange and green) with fleur-de-lys design.

8. BH79 111 Fragment of lozenge-shaped deep red fabric moulded brick.

9. BH83 TER1 (=953) (Removing Turf) Moulded brick in light red fabric with mortar on upper and lower surfaces.

Unphased

These contexts contained similar material to the later phases, and

most is probably post-Phase V. The finds included large pieces of glazed floor tile, in particular half of a large square tile (204mm long) and most of a triangular tile (198mm two sides, half a square), both 30mm thick. There were also fragments of grey roof tile, vitrified brick, and red roof tile.

THE DITCH

(Fig 50 Nos 10-27)

Large quantities of this material were recovered from the two ditch excavations. The majority of pieces were plain glazed floor tiles, mostly green, but a few were clear glazed, with or without a white slip beneath. Roof tile, glazed, unglazed and burnt, formed the second largest component. Some of this was flat, but there were also ridge, valley and pantile fragments. Some of the pantiles were glazed deep brown. A few brick fragments were kept, but only if they were decorated in some way (vitrified, moulded or rubbed). The remainder of the collection consisted of decorated Delft and encaustic tile fragments. Most of the patterns on the Delft fragments were illustrated by Moorhouse, (1971), but if the pattern was incomplete they have been illustrated here to allow the whole pattern to be reconstructed. All but three of the encaustic tile fragments were of the same design (and possibly the same stamp) as the one illustrated from the west ditch. Two other designs were represented by three tiles found in the east ditch.

West Ditch

10. BH80 402 Part of a grey ridge tile with tooth-like eminences. Red fabric, reduced (or burnt) surface.

11. BH79 163 Fragment of Delft tile, pink buff fabric, blue and white decoration. Design as Moorhouse Tile No 4.

12. BH80 402 As 11, but creamy white fabric. Another similar fragment was present, but was smoke damaged.

13. BH81 408 Medieval encaustic tile with floral geometric design, glazed yellow. A similar design was found at St. Cross, Hampshire (Greenfield 1893).

East Ditch

14. BH82 0502 Fragment of unglazed red pantile.

15-16. BH82 0502 Two shaped red tile fragments.

17. BH83 0530 Fragment of rubbed red brick, circular design, with central pit for compass point.

18. BH80/81 458 Fragment of tile with blue and white design. Not illustrated by Moorhouse, but probably part of his Tile 6.

19. BH82 461 Smoke damaged tile of similar design to 18, creamy white fabric, blue and white decoration. At least four other fragments of similar design were present in this context, plus five smoke damaged fragments.

20. BH82 462 Another fragment of a tile with the same design as 18 and 19 above. Fragments of two other similar tiles were also present.

21. BH82 462 Polychrome tile with geometric design, light red fabric. As Moorhouse Tile 1.

22. BH82 462 Polychrome tile with blurred pattern caused by heat damage. As Moorhouse Tile 2. Two other fragments of the same type were also present.

23. BH83 0530 (upper fragment) and BH82 462 (lower fragments). Three fragments of the same tile from different contexts. Partly smoke blackened.

24. BH82 461 (upper fragment) and BH83 0530 (lower fragment). Two fragments of the same tile found in different contexts in the east ditch. Part of a tile with similar design to 23 above. Polychrome, smoke blackened.

25. BH82 461 Part of a thick encaustic tile with fleur-de-lys design in red-purple fabric with large inclusions. A similar tile was found at Chertsey Abbey (Poulton 1988, 57) and is recorded by Eames (1980 No 2650). Dated 1290-1300.

26. BH83 0527 Part of a thick encaustic tile in dark red fabric with plain fleur-de-lys design, and scooped keys in the base. The same design was illustrated by Platt and Coleman-Smith (1975 Vol 2, No 1437) from a site in Southampton, dated to the 13th century. It is also present in Winchester Cathedral and a number of other abbeys and churches in Hampshire (Knapp 1954), and was found in excavations at St. George's Street, Winchester (Cunliffe 1964, 158-9).

27. BH80/81 1001 Fragment of Delft tile.

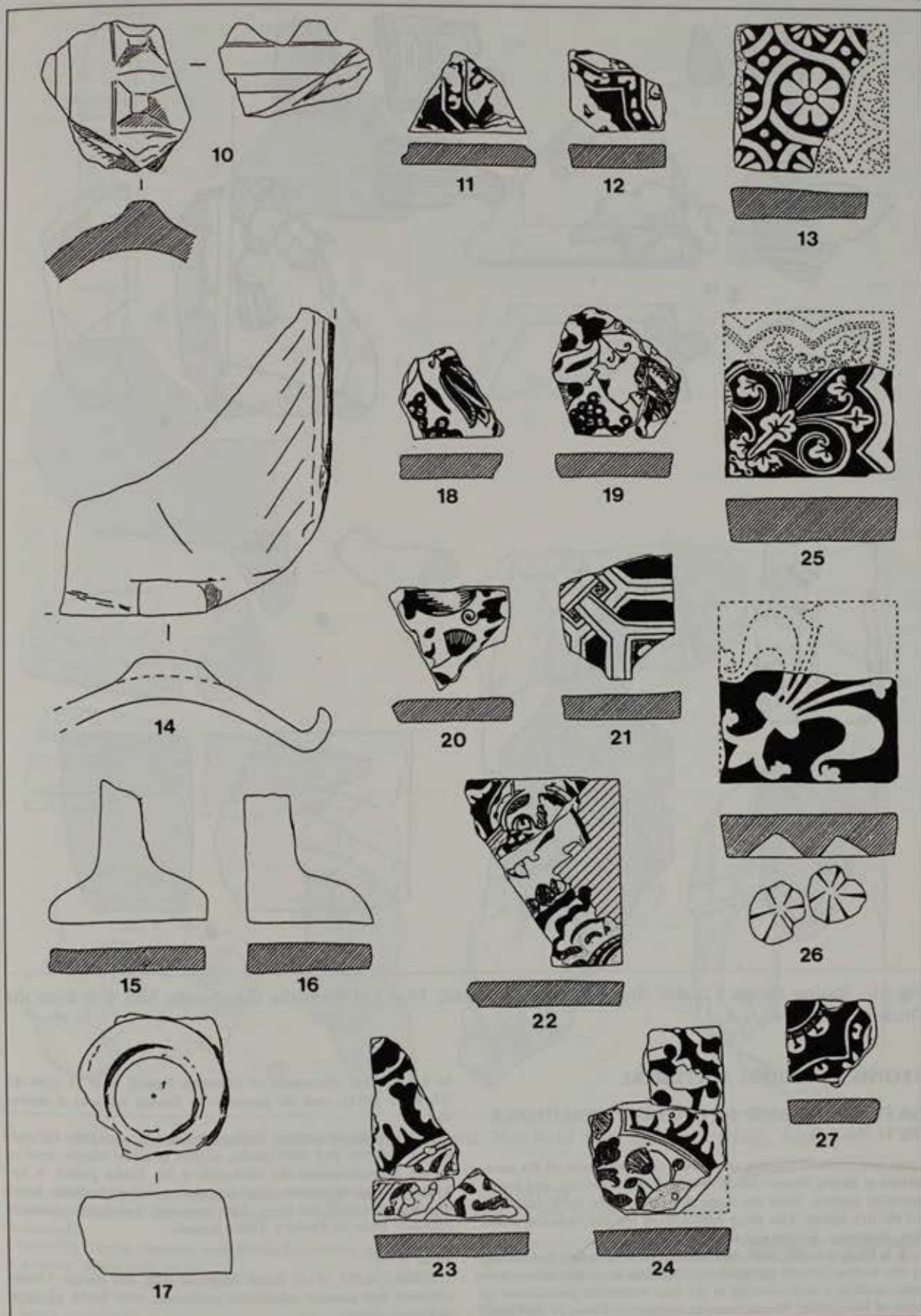


Fig 50 Basing House Citadel. Ceramic Building Material. Nos 10-13 from the Ditch (West); Nos 14-27 from the Ditch (East), Scale 1:4.

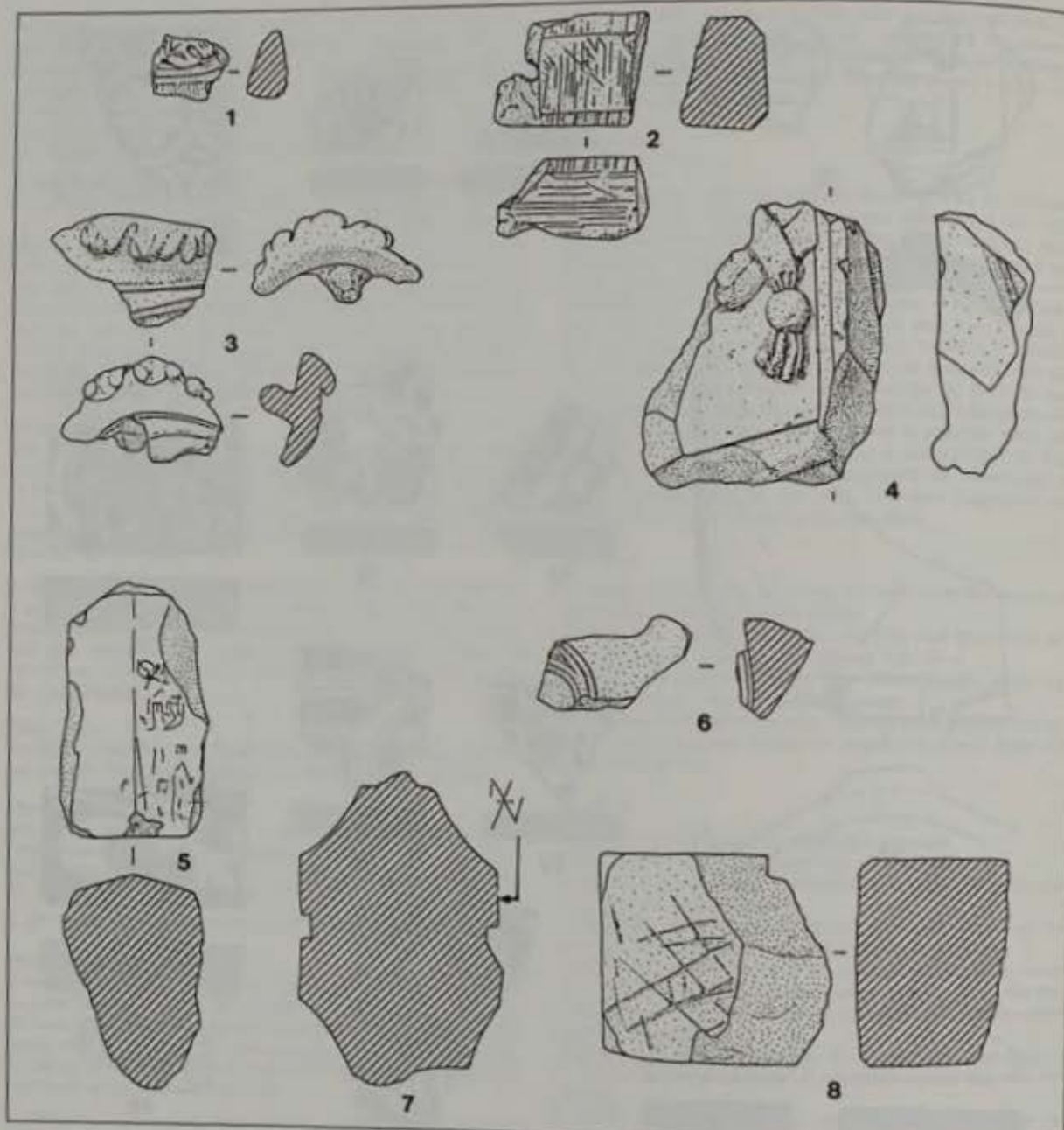


Fig 51 Basing House Citadel. Stone Building Material. Nos 1-4 from the Gatehouse; Nos 5-8 from the Ditch (West), Scale 1:4.

STONE BUILDING MATERIAL

GATEHOUSE AND RINGWORK TERMINALS

(Fig 51 Nos 1-4)

Large quantities of building stone were recovered from all the excavations at Basing House. Much of it is stored at the site, and awaits specialist analysis. Only the stone from the recent work was studied for this report. The stone rubble from the site included chalk, flint, limestone, calcite and slate.

It is likely that the chalk and flint are of local origin and belong to the earliest phases of building. The slate is of the type sometimes used as a wall covering in the late vernacular architecture of parts of Hampshire. Pieces occur in contexts of Phase IV and later, and in three contexts in the east ditch. Most fragments were small (less than 100mm) and worn, and only two were pierced. All were thicker than the modern variety. Slate was used, along with stucco,

in the external decoration of Nonsuch Palace, built in 1538-47 (Howard 1987), and its presence at Basing suggests a similar use.

Much of the stone from Basing consisted of mouldings for mulioned windows and door jambs, as well as ashlar blocks, used as quoins to complement the brickwork in the Tudor period. A few fragments had the remains of plaster on one or more surfaces. Some pieces may be early, but most of the fragments stored at the museum probably relate to Paulet's Tudor houses.

Phase V-VI

1. BH83 GHW1 (=17) Small fragment with leaf design. Cream coloured fine-grained calcareous sandstone, with flecks of mica, unknown source.

Phase V/VILate

2. BH78 50 Small piece of worked stone with keying scratches fit

Fig 52 Ba

stone. Probab
calcareous sand
Gwentland.
1. BH78 72 Ca
of a stone's face

Upfound
4. BH82 + (U
stone. Light pink

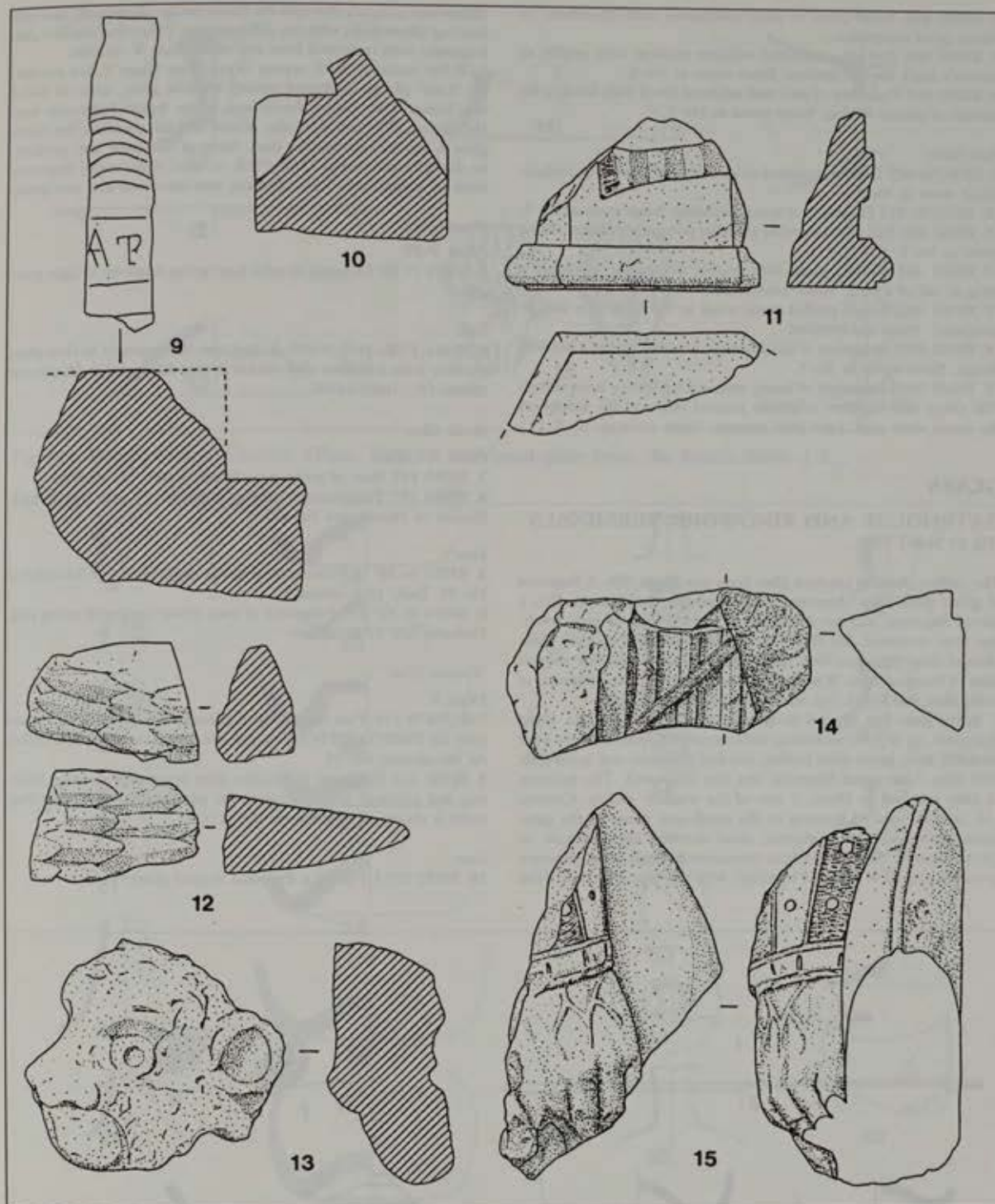


Fig 52 Basing House Citadel. Stone Building Material. Nos 9-15 from the Ditch (East), Scale 1:4.

plaster. Probably part of a window frame. "Local" malmstone, a calcareous sandstone (the East Hampshire version of the Upper Greensand).

3. BH78 72 Curved fragment with foliate decoration, possibly part of a statue? Same stone as No 1.

Unphased

4. BH82 + (U/S) Part of a carved panel perhaps from a coat of arms. Light pink surface. Fine-grained sandy limestone.

THE DITCH

(Figs 51 Nos 5-8 and 52 Nos 9-15)

Worked stone from the ditch included mouldings for window mullions and door jambs, ashlar blocks and decorative pieces. A few pieces of slate and calcite were also collected.

West Ditch

5. BH80 402 Fragment of fine-grained sandy limestone with white-washed plaster on two faces and graffiti on one. The style of writing is 16th century or earlier.

6. BH80 402 Small piece of pink malmstone with curvilinear or foliate relief decoration.
7. BH80 408 Part of a moulded window mullion with graffiti or mason's mark on one surface. Same stone as No 5.
8. BH80 408 Fragment of pale buff ashlar block with hatches for mortar or plaster keying. Same stone as No 5.

East Ditch

9. BH80/81 M2 Broken moulded stone with graffiti on one surface. Same stone as No 5.
10. BH80/81 M2 Fragment of stone moulding. Same stone as No 5.
11. BH82 462 Part of a decorated irregular polygonal column. Same stone as No 5.
12. BH82 462 Carved stone with feather decoration, probably a wing or tail of a bird. Stone unidentified.
13. BH82 462 Rough eroded stone mask in the form of a lion or grotesque. Stone unidentified.
14. BH82 0502 Fragment of carved stone, possibly part of a heraldic design. Same stone as No 5.
15. BH83 0523 Fragment of hand, arm and leg from a male statue. The sleeve and leg were originally painted red, and the stripes on the sleeve were gold. Late 16th century. Same stone as No 5.

GLASS**GATEHOUSE AND RINGWORK TERMINALS**
(Fig 53 Nos 1-10)

The earliest phase to produce glass finds was Phase IIIb. A fragment of green glass tube (diameter 5mm externally, 2mm internally), a curved fragment, and two fragments of window glass in poor condition were recovered. Six Phase IV contexts contained window glass. Most of these fragments were badly oxidised, but at least one showed signs of burning (from Wall 9), and one was green. One fragment of bottle glass was found, but no vessel glass was recovered.

Bottle glass first appears in quantity in Phase V contexts. Eight fragments, all in poor condition, were recovered. Most of these were probably from green wine bottles, but one fragment was apparently dark blue. One vessel fragment was also recovered. The majority of glass assigned to Phase V was of the window variety. Context 118 (a large area of burning in the south-east room of the gatehouse) contained 98 fragments, most showing signs of heat or smoke damage. They varied from colourless through green to brown (possibly a result of decay or burning), with one blue fragment. Four

sherds were painted, two with the Paulet badge (illustrated), one with lettering (illustrated), with one indeterminate. Nine other window glass fragments were recovered from two other Phase V contexts.

A few contexts which appear to post-date Phase V, but pre-date the 'Late' phase, contained mainly window glass, some of which was burnt. Two vessel sherds and a few bottle fragments were also found. Window glass also occurs in Late contexts, but bottle glass is the more common find. Most of the latter can probably be dated to the period 1680-1715, or later. Four vessel fragments were recovered from Late contexts, two colourless and two green.

*Vessel Glass**Phase V-VI*

1. BH78 17 SF 33 Small circular foot or rim fragment in light green glass.

Late

2. BH83 TER1 [10] (=953) Rolled over rim fragment in clear glass, possibly from a shallow dish similar to that illustrated in Moorhouse (Glass 18). 1600-1650?

*Bottle Glass**Phase V/VII/Late*

3. BH80 167 Base of green wine bottle. Late 17th century?
4. BH80 167 Fragmentary base of green bottle with pontil mark. Similar to Moorhouse No 62.

Late

5. BH78 56 SF 171 Green wine bottle base. Similar to Moorhouse No 39. Early 18th century?
6. BH78 69 SF 238 Fragment of wine bottle neck with string ring. Probably late 17th century.

*Window Glass**Phase V*

- 7-8. BH79 118 Two fragments of painted window glass decorated with the Paulet badge (a key suspended from a cord tied in a circle). As Moorhouse No 75.
9. BH80 118 Fragment of window glass apparently showing lettering, and coloured yellow between the parallel lines. A smaller fragment is shown in Moorhouse (No 87).

Late

10. BH82 0511 Part of a diamond shaped quarry.

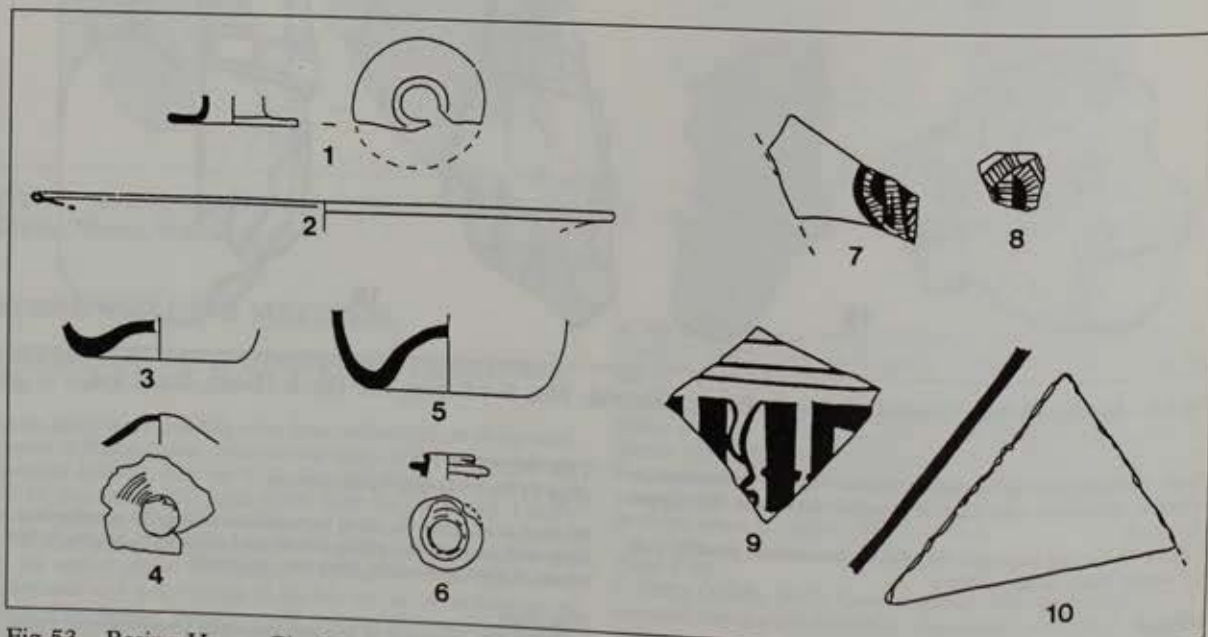


Fig 53 Basing House Citadel. Glass. Nos 1-2 Vessel glass, Scale 1:2; Nos 3-6 Bottle glass, Scale 1:4; Nos 7-10 Window glass, Scale 1:2. All from the Gatehouse.

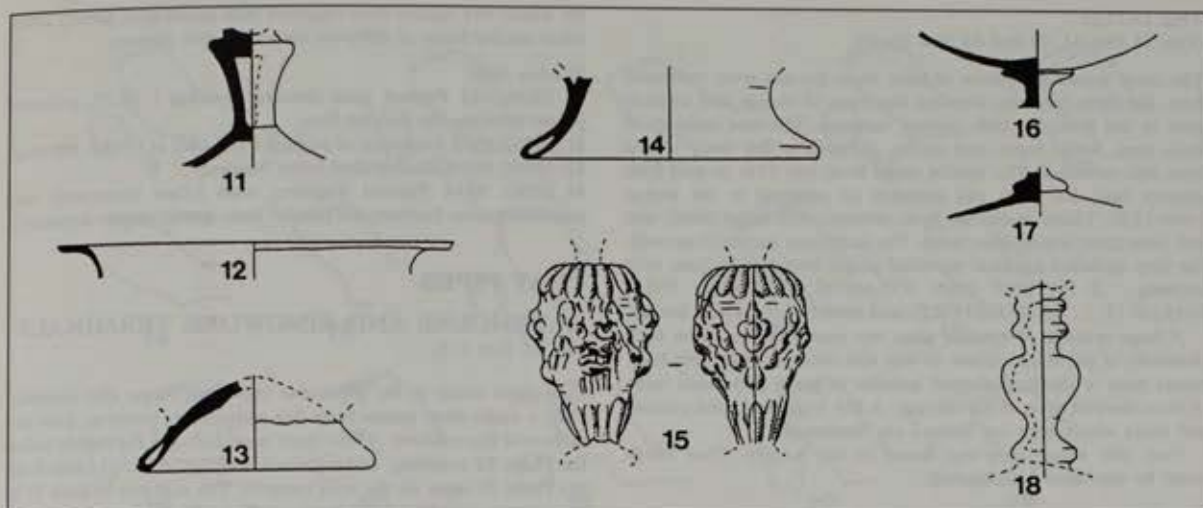


Fig 54 Basing House Citadel. Glass. Nos 11-18 Vessel glass from the Ditch, Scale 1:2.

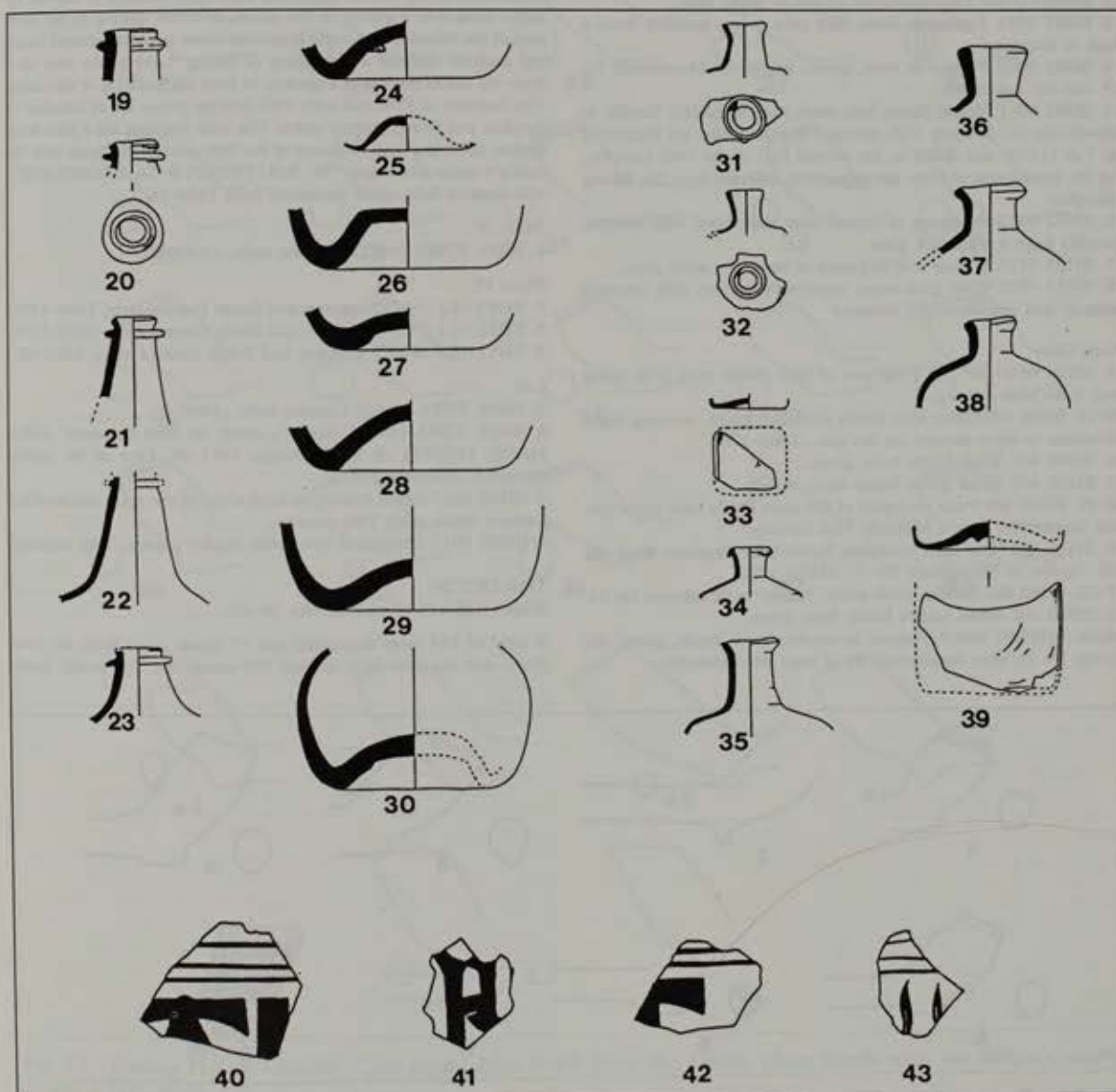


Fig 55 Basing House Citadel. Glass. Nos 19-39 Bottle glass, Scale 1:4; Nos 40-43 Window glass, Scale 1:2. All from the Ditch.

THE DITCH

(Figs 54 Nos 11-18 and 55 Nos 19-43)

The most interesting pieces of glass from the site were recovered from the ditch contexts, showing the types of vessels and window glass in use from the 16th century onwards. The vast majority of finds were bottle bases and necks, although a few body sherds were also collected. The bottles range from late 17th to mid 20th century date, but most can probably be assigned to the period 1660-1720. Those illustrated from contexts 402 (west ditch) and 461 (east ditch) are representative. The later types are not illustrated, but they included machine moulded ginger beer bottles (one with lettering: ...E PATENT DAN RYLANDS BARNSLEY SOLE MAKER / J..... BASINGSTOKE) and modern brown beer bottles.

A large quantity of window glass was also recovered from both terminals of the ditch. Some of this was modern, but most fragments were of diamond-shaped quarries in green glass, and some of these showed signs of fire damage. A few fragments were painted and those which were not blurred are illustrated.

Very little vessel glass was found in this locality. That which could be identified is illustrated.

Vessel Glass

11. BH80 402 Fragment of wine glass stem in colourless glass, badly crizzled (possibly due to too much potash?).
12. BH80/81 460 Two fragments of rim in green glass.
13. BH82 0501 Pushed-in base, very pale green, possibly from a flask or decanter.
14. BH82 0502 Pushed-in base, green, similar to Moorhouse No 23, but not decorated.
15. BH82 0501 Mould blown lion mask stem fragment. Similar to Moorhouse No 2. Early 17th century? Similar stems are illustrated by Tait (1979) and dated to the second half of the 16th century,, but the bowl forms of these are apparently different from the Basing examples.
16. BH82 0502 Fragment of crystal wine glass bowl with merese, possibly from a lion mask glass.
17. BH83 0519 Merese and fragment of base of a wine glass.
18. BH82 0502 Wine glass stem, apparently hollow, with inverted baluster and mereses. 17th century?

Bottle Glass

19. BH78 66/67 SF 105 Fragment of wine bottle neck with string ring. Late 17th century.
- 20-23. BH80 402. Four wine bottle necks, all green, showing slight variations in types present on the site. c1680-1700.
24. BH80 401 Wine bottle base, green.
25. BH80 402 Small green bottle base, round.
- 26-29. BH80 402 Four examples of the main bottle base types present on the site. Late 17th/Early 18th century.
30. BH82 461 The most complete bottle base fragment from the site. Similar to Moorhouse No 37. c1690-1710.
- 31-32. BH80 402 Smaller bottle necks. Similar to Moorhouse No 44.
33. BH80 402 Small square bottle base, green.
- 34-38. BH80/81 460 Variations in smaller bottle necks, green. All except No 36 were represented by at least two examples.

39. BH82 461 Square base fragment with pontil scar, green. Three other similar bases of different sizes were also present.

Window Glass

40. BH82 461 Painted glass showing lettering (.TL.?), coloured yellow between the parallel lines.
41. BH82 0502 Fragment of painted letter (A?) in Gothic lettering.
42. BH82 0514 Unidentified letter fragment.
43. BH82 0514 Painted fragment with foliate decoration and coloured yellow between the parallel lines (partly smoke damaged).

CLAY PIPES

GATEHOUSE AND RINGWORK TERMINALS

(Fig 56 Nos 1-8)

Clay pipes occur in the gatehouse area from Phase IIIa onwards. Only a single stem comes from this early phase, however, from the surface of the roadway. Three more were found in the rubble below the Phase IV roadway, and a plain bowl (Fig 56 No 1) came from the Phase IV layer on the west rampart. The majority of finds (132 stem pieces and 19 bowls) are from Phase V and later contexts.

Most dateable fragments from the Gatehouse area can be assigned to the second half of the 17th century and therefore post-date the destruction of the house. They may have been brought to the site by locals using it as a quarry. A few pieces, however, belong to the early part of the century, and some fragments show signs of external burning, perhaps inflicted at the razing of Basing. Later pieces may date from the use of the site as a garden, or from the building of the canal. The majority of 17th and early 18th century pieces are of London or London and South Eastern styles. The only evidence for a pipe from further afield is a stem fragment of the 19th century stamped with the maker's name and origin, "W. SOUTHORN & Co. BROSELEYE", a Shropshire firm which flourished from 1802-41.

Phase IV

1. BH83 RBW2 (=911) London style, c1660-80.

Phase VI

2. BH82 +L1 (=615) London and South Eastern style, 1690-1700.
3. BH82 +L1 (=615) London and South Eastern style, 1670-1700.
4. BH82 +L1 (=615) London and South Eastern style, 1680-90.

Late

5. BH83 TER1 (=953) London style, c1640-60.
6. BH83 TER1 (=953) Maker's mark on heel fragment THO/MA[S]/HV[NT] of Marlborough, 1667-96. One of his earlier examples (Atkinson 1971).
7. BH82 0511 Small rosette on both sides of the spur, unidentified maker's mark, early 18th century.
8. BH82 0511 Decorated bowl with ?maker's mark, 19th century.

THE DITCH.

(Figs 57 Nos 9-49 and 58 Nos 50-68)

A total of 185 stem fragments and 17 bowls came from the west ditch, and the east ditch yielded 595 stems and 110 bowls. Some

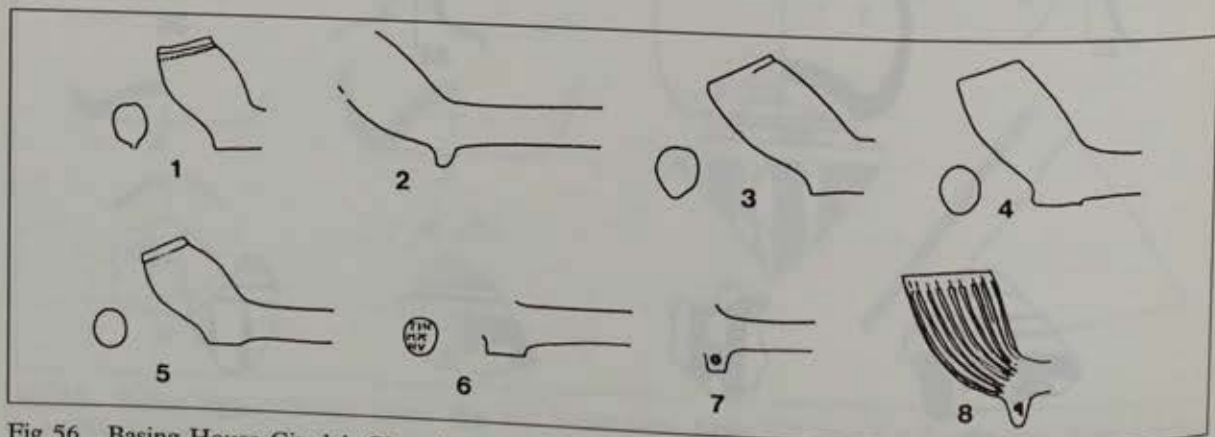


Fig 56 Basing House Citadel. Clay pipes. Nos 1-8 from the Gatehouse, Scale 1:2.

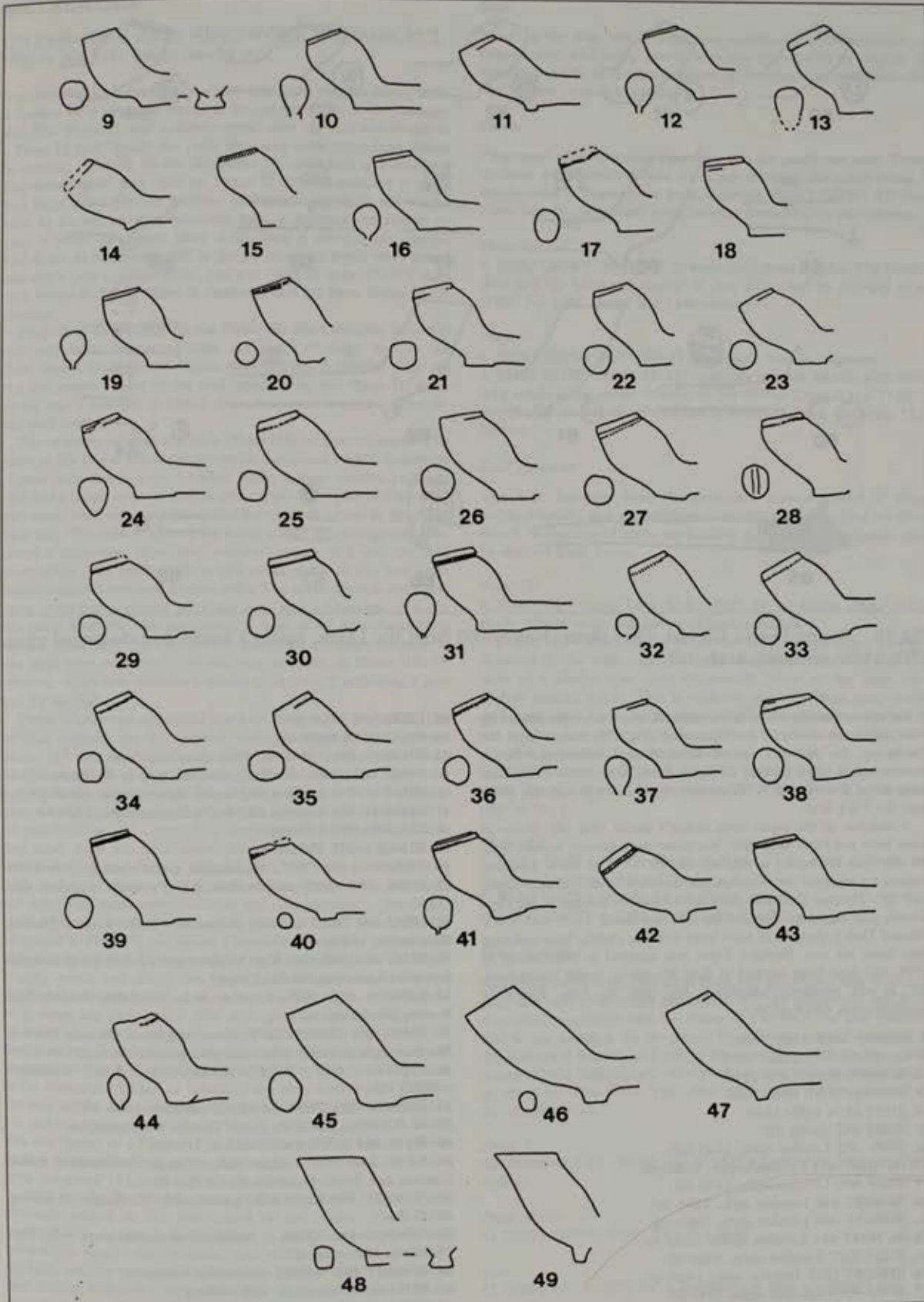


Fig 57 Basing House Citadel. Clay pipes. Nos 9-49 from the Ditch, plain bowls with no maker's marks, c1580-1760, Scale 1:2.

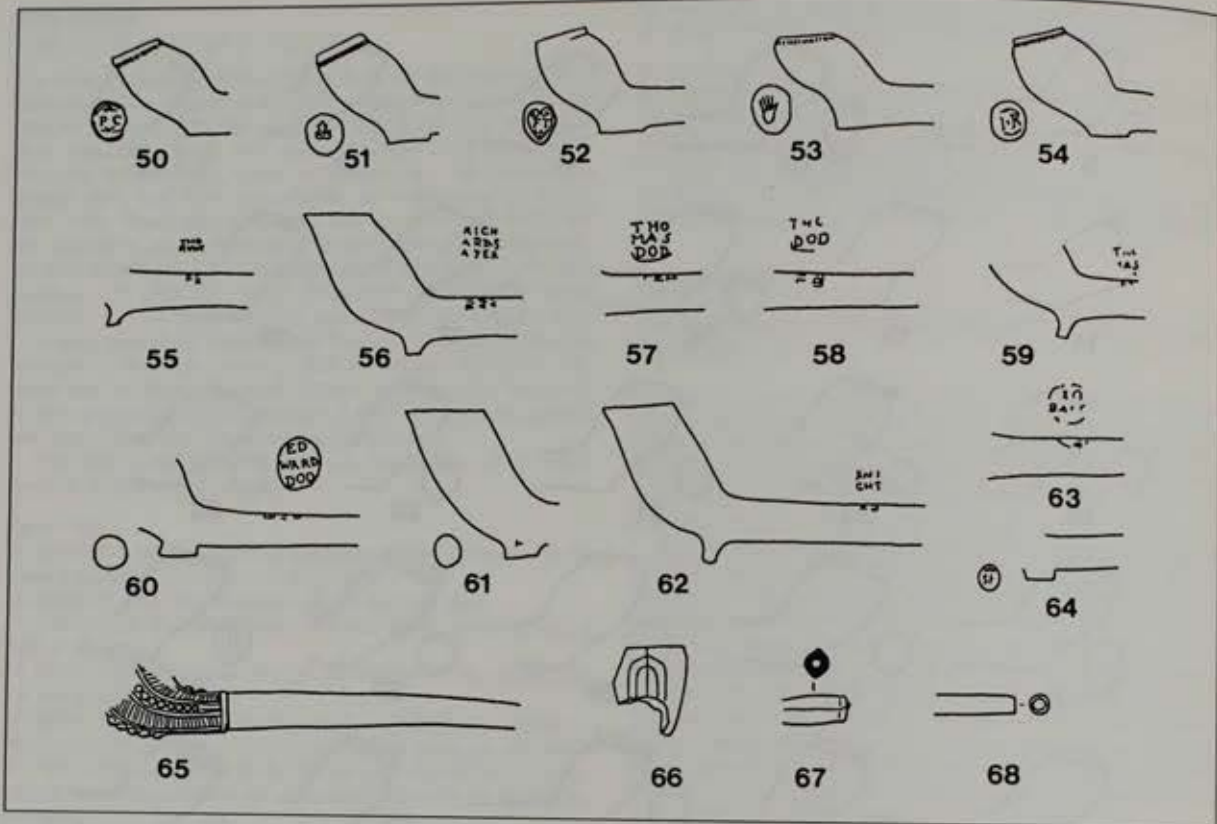


Fig 58 Basing House Citadel. Clay pipes. Nos 50-68 from the Ditch, maker's marks and decorated pipes, 17th-19th centuries, Scale 1:2.

of the most common bowl types, most of which are represented by more than one example, are illustrated (Fig 57), and as with the Gatehouse the majority are of London or London and South Eastern styles. The earliest example dates from 1580-1600, and there are a few of early 17th century type, but the majority post-date the Civil War.

A number of the pipes have maker's marks (Fig 58). Some of these have not been identified, but some were already known from the site (see Atkinson, in Moorhouse 1971). The most common makers represented are Thomas and Edward Dod, Richard Sayer, and 'IR'. Thomas Dod may have been based in Boldre, in the New Forest, and marriage licences for him are dated 1695 and 1723. Edward Dod is thought to have been working slightly later and may have been his son. Richard Sayer was married in Winchester in 1696, but may have worked in East Woodhay, north Hampshire. 'IR' is not positively identified, but may be John Rowte of Southampton, dated 1666.

9. BH80/81 1001 1580-1600.
- 10-11. BH83 0519 1600-1640.
12. BH80/81 1001 1600-1640.
13. BH80/81 1001 1600-1650.
14. BH82 0514 1600-1640.
15. BH80 402 c1620-40?
16. BH80 402 London style, 1640-60?
- 17-18. BH80 404 London styles, 1640-60.
19. BH81 409 London style, 1640-60.
20. BH80/81 458 London style, 1640-60.
21. BH80/81 460 London style, 1640-60.
- 22-34. BH82 461 London styles, 1640-60.
35. BH83 0527 London style, 1640-60.
36. BH80/81 1001 London style, 1640-60.
37. BH82 0514 London style, 1640-60.
38. BH80 402 London style?
39. BH80 402 London style, c1660-80.
40. BH80/81 458 London style, 1660-80.
41. BH82 461 London style, 1660-80.

42. BH82 461 1660-80.

43. BH82 0514 1660-80.

44. BH80/81 1001 1660-80. Very worn with use.

45. BH80 402 c1680-90. Very common type in the ditch.

46. BH80/81 453 London and South Eastern style, c1690-1700.

47. BH80/81 458 London and South Eastern style, 1700-50.

48. BH80/81 452 1720-60?

49. BH80/81 453 1720-60.

50. BH80/81 1001 "PC", unidentified maker's mark, 1600-1650.

51. BH82 461 Leaf, unidentified maker's mark. London style, c1630-40.

52. BH82 461 "FT" in heart, unidentified maker's mark. Probably Winchester, c1630-40.

53. BH82 461 Gauntlet. West Country style, c1600-1700. Gauntlet family of Amesbury, or local copy.

54. BH80/81 458 "IR". London style, 1660-80. Possibly John Rowte, Southampton.

55. BH80 402 THO/HUNT. Stem fragment. Thomas Hunt of Marlborough, probably a late example (see also No 6). c1670-1700?

56. BH80/81 458 RICH/ARD.S/AYER. East Woodhay?, c1680-1720.

57. BH80/81 453 THO/MAS/DOD. Boldre, 1690-1720.

58-59. BH80/81 454 Two more Thomas Dod examples.

60. BH79 163 ED/WARD/DOD. c1710-30.

61. BH79 163 "TP", either side of spur. Unidentified maker. London and South Eastern style, c1720-40.

62. BH80/81 458 KNI/GHT, presumably W. Knight of Basing. c1720-60.

63. BH80/81 452 IO/BA..., unidentified maker, stem only. Late 17th/early 18th century?

64. BH80/81 452 "S[R]", unidentified maker.

65. BH82 461 Decorated, 19th century.

66. BH83 0501 Decorated fragment, 19th century.

67. BH80/81 452 Mouthpiece.

68. BH80/81 454 Mouthpiece.

METALWORK

GATEHOUSE AND RINGWORK TERMINALS
(Figs 59 Nos 1-21 and 60 Nos 22-39)

Few metal items came from the early phases in the Gatehouse area. A copper alloy strip was found in the lowest levels of the passageway (Pre Phase I), and a small copper alloy tag end was found in a Phase Ia gully beside the path. Five iron nails came from Phase Ia contexts. The fill of the flint-lined pit contained a number of fragments which may date to Phase II. These included a large iron hinge strap (precise location unknown), and from the brown layer in the pit an iron crossbow bolt, a fragment of stirrup or spur, a piece of copper alloy sheet, and a pierced and folded lead sheet. In the primary fill of the pit (the grey layer) were found iron strips (one a hinge strap), and two types of nails. Twelve nails were found in other Phase II contexts, and 16 from Phase II-III contexts.

Finds from the footings for the Phase IIIa chalk roadway included nails and other fragments (and one piece of slag), and in the chalk itself a fragment of copper alloy buckle. A copper alloy tag end was found in one of the wall trenches for the Phase III gatehouse, and a number of others were recovered from a contemporary wall footing.

The majority of finds are from Phase IIIb or later contexts. The layers in the Phase IIIb west gatehouse contained twenty fragments of iron, including a bone handled knife, a door handle, padlock, nails and a hinge strap, as well as two copper alloy pins and a folded lead sheet with iron accretions (similar to that found in the flint-lined pit). The rubble around the kerbs across the passageway contained a horseshoe, three lead window comes, and two cut lead waste strips. The brick drain in the south room of the east gatehouse contained two lead musket balls. The small drain in the north room contained a copper alloy tag end, and a fragment of a pin also came from the east gatehouse. A total of 47 nails came from various Phase IIIb contexts in the gatehouse. A large number of iron nails were recovered from the west rampart, in Phase IIIb-IV contexts, which also contained copper alloy objects including 5 pins and 32 tag ends.

Phase IV contexts contained few non-ferrous metal objects. The bedding material for the cobbled surface contained two window comes and one small lead strip. The chalk layer above the chalk foundation which divided the east gatehouse contained three lead and one stone musket balls. Copper alloy tag ends were recovered from a bedding trench for the Phase IV gatehouse, a chalk layer in the east building and a pre-cobble surface in the passageway. Three pins came from the layer above the north-east Phase IIIb drain. Iron finds consisted largely of nails (79) but there were also two knife blades, an ox shoe and a piece of iron sheet. A few iron nails and other fragments were found on the east rampart.

The fill of the large H-shaped feature, which was probably deposited in Phase V, contained a horseshoe fragment and a small copper alloy tag end (perhaps related to the one found in the Phase Ia gully, which was cut by this feature). The burnt area in the east gatehouse contained a piece of melted window came, a burnt lead strip, some tag ends and 7 pins with globular heads. A piece of fired lead shot was found above or embedded in the gatehouse cobbles. One nail, four window comes and two lead strips were recovered from rubble in the passageway which may have been deposited in the destruction phase, or following the early excavations. Rubble deposits in the east gatehouse contained a large globular headed pin and two fragments of World War II shrapnel, a piece of which was also found in a Phase VI context. On the west side, a rubble deposit contained a small hemispherical stud. Various Phase V contexts contained 131 nails and a large staple.

Contexts assigned to the later phases contained debris which probably related to the destruction of the house. Metal finds included iron knives, large numbers of nails, staples, spurs and horseshoes, copper alloy buttons, pins and buckles, and lead musket balls, window comes and strips, and a piece of slag. Two unusual lead objects included a six-pointed star or flower similar to those used to decorate the walls at Clarendon Palace, Wiltshire (Stearns 1984), and a long tapered plumb weight pierced at the wide end. Objects of more recent origin included two wrought iron spikes, fragments of barbed wire, and World War II shrapnel.

Iron

Much of the iron was in very poor condition, badly corroded or fragmentary, and many pieces were not identifiable as objects. It was not possible to X-ray the pieces, so drawings are in outline only and include corrosion products.

Knives

Fragments of seven knives were found in the gatehouse area. Three of these are illustrated, and three are missing, the other being a handle with a fragment of bone attached (BH83 GHW1 SF 46). None has the cylindrical bone handles illustrated by Moorhouse.

Phase IIIb

1. BH83 GHW2 (=902) SF 48 Knife with bone handle. The handle (but not the blade) is similar to one illustrated by Cowgill *et al* (1987 No 128), dated late 14th century.

Phase V

2. BH83 GHW1 (=17) SF 31 Knife with handle fragment.
3. BH83 GHW1 (=17) SF 45 Fragment of bone handle with knife tang sandwiched inside. Similar to No 259 in Cowgill *et al* (1987), except that the handle of that one is wooden, dated early-mid 15th century.

Door Furniture

The door furniture from the gatehouse area consisted of hinge straps, a handle and a possible padlock. All those identified are illustrated. A number of nails, particularly those with large heads, may be derived from doors.

Phase II?

4. BH82 +L1 (Grey layer SLP =769) SF 20 Hinge strap? 2mm thick, 22mm wide, pierced at c45mm intervals.
5. BH82 +L1 (Section E. of SLP) Two long pierced strips (one not illustrated), one with a nail (c90mm long) still in its hole, and 16+ nails of a similar type (one illustrated). Some of the nails have slightly smaller heads. This is probably one very large hinge strap, since the curved part is not pierced. There were some patches of red on the grey surface (which may be a non-ferrous plating), and this also appeared on some of the nails.
6. BH82 +L1 (Grey layer SLP =769) SF 20 Hinge? A fragment of burnt wood was adhering to the inside of one arm. This may be part of No 4.

Phase IIIb

7. BH83 GHW2 (=902) SF 48 Padlock? There is no evidence for the "shackle" being hinged, or for a key hole.
8. BH83 GHW2 (=902) SF 48 Hinge strap?
9. BH83 GHW2 (=902) SF 48 Door handle?

Horse Furniture

Five horseshoes were identified from the gatehouse: one from the grey clay layer post-dating Phase II in the east gatehouse, one from the rubble associated with the Phase IIIb kerbs in the gate passage, one in the bedding for the Phase IV cobbles, one (illustrated) in the H-shaped feature, and one in the upper layers of the west gatehouse. Three fragmentary stirrups/spurs were also recovered, two of which are illustrated. The other came from the brown layer in the flint-lined pit.

Phase V

10. BH82 +L1 F1 (=547) SF 10 Half a horseshoe, only one hole visible.

Phase V-VI

11. BH83 GHW1 (=17) Part of a spur?

Late

12. BH82 +L1 (=770) SF 3 Fragment of spur or stirrup?

Structural Metalwork

Most of the fragments of iron from this area were nails, many of which were too corroded for identification. Those illustrated

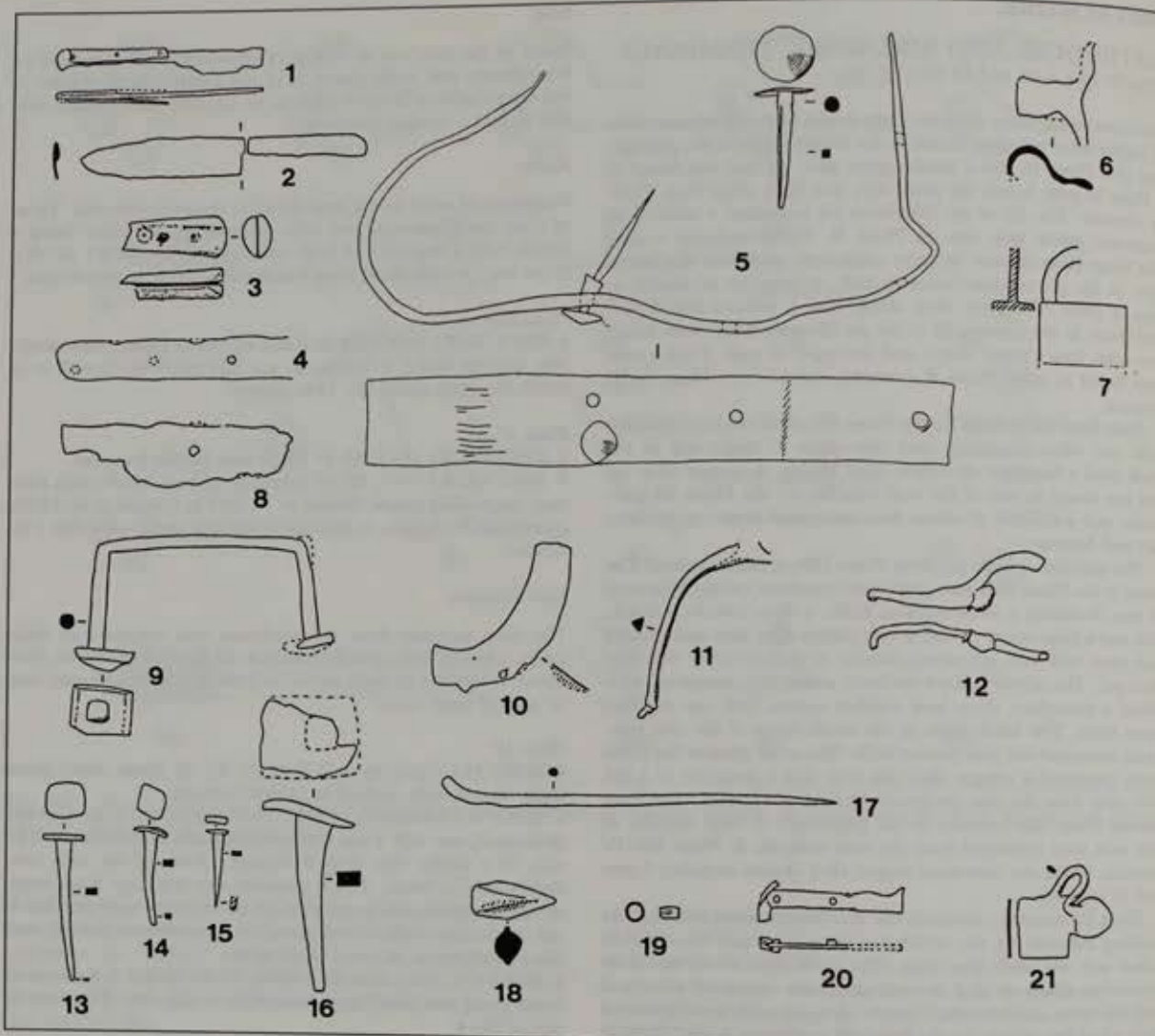


Fig 59 Basing House Citadel. Metalwork. Nos 1-21 Iron from the Gatehouse, Scale 1:4.

probably represent the most common types, but a larger selection is illustrated from the ditch.

Phase II

13-14. BH82 +L1 (Grey layer SLP, =769) SF20 Two nails with square shafts and large square heads. At least 16 of this type were present in this context.

15. BH82 +L1 (Grey layer SLP, =769) SF20 Small nail with rectangular shaft and small head. At least 11 of these were present, and were generally less corroded than the other sort, suggesting a different metal composition.

Phase IIIb

16. BH83 GHW2 (=902) SF 48 Large nail with flat square head. Another similar but longer and without a head was also found. The same type is illustrated by Moorhouse (No 110), and identified as a door stud.

17. BH83 GHW2 (=902) SF 48 Long iron spike with circular section.

Military Equipment

Only one pre-World War II iron object from the gatehouse could definitely be assigned to this category.

Phase II

18. BH82 +L1 (Brown layer SLP, =756) Small crossbow bolt head?

Miscellaneous

Apart from the objects illustrated, fragments of a "buckle" (17), various flat pieces of iron (533, 902), an unidentified tool (770) and various modern items were also found.

Phase IIIb

19. BH83 GHW1 (=17) SF 33 Small ring (11mm diameter).

20. BH83 GHW1 (=17) SF 46 Rivetted strip.

Late

21. BH83 TER1 (=953) SF 30 Unidentified object. Possibly part of a gun or padlock.

Copper Alloy

Most of these items relate to dress. The most common finds were tag ends, pins, buckles, and hemispherical mounts. Finds not illustrated include a strip with rectangular section (761), a sheet fragment (954), lace ends (141, 133, 352, 130, 533, 350, 118, 746, 547), pins (351, 123, 127, 902), mounts (4, 17) and a small piece of twisted wire (0503) possibly from a bracelet.

Phase II

22. BH82 +L1 (Brown layer SLP, =756) SF 17 Cut sheet, probably the back of a buckle plate.

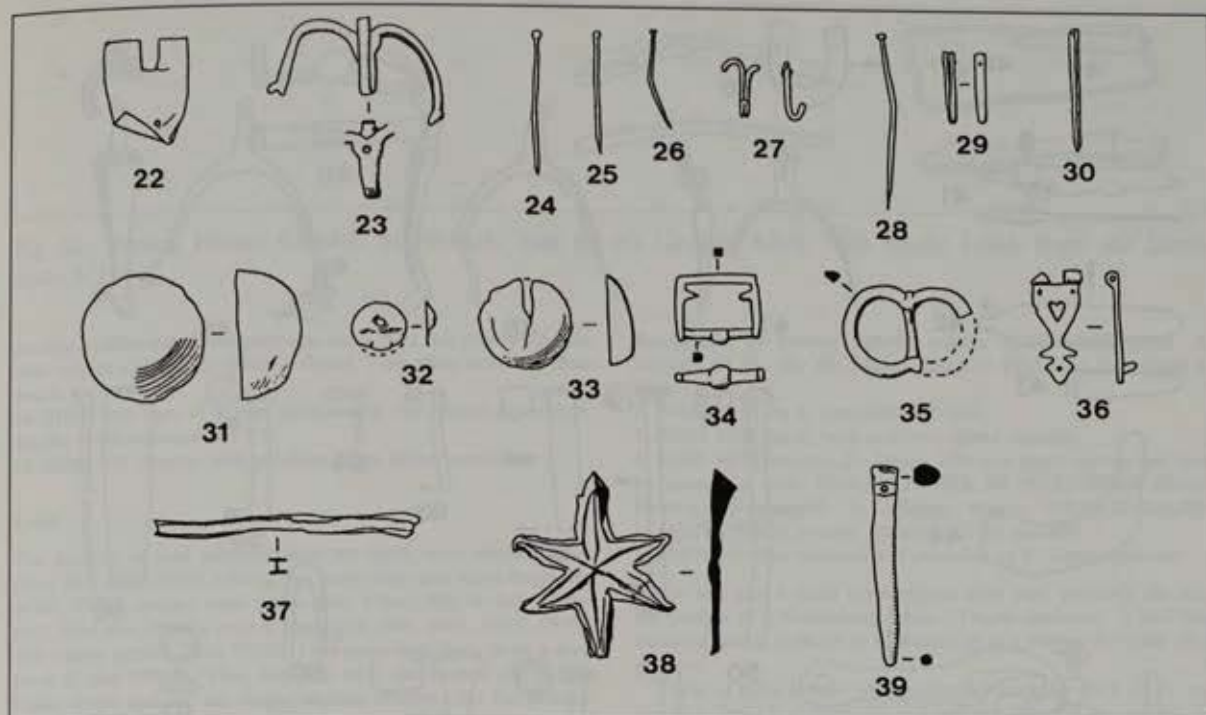


Fig 60 Basing House Citadel. Metalwork. Nos 22-36 Copper Alloy, Nos 37-39 Lead, from the Gatehouse, Scale 1:2.

Phase IIIa

23. BH82 GHC1 (=542) SF 6 Buckle fragment.

Phase IIIb-IV

24-26. BH83 RBW3 (=954) SF 39 Two pins with globular heads and one with a double ringed head (see also No 28).

27. BH83 RBW3 (=954) SF 39 Small hook of twisted wire.

28. BH83 RBW3 (=954) SF 44 Pin with double ringed head.

29. BH83 RBW3 (=954) SF 44 Lace end with small rivet. 32 of these lace ends were found on the west rampart in this context. Similar examples were found in a number of contexts ranging from Phase Ia to Phase V-VI (see No 30 below).

Phase V-VI

30. BH83 GHW1 (=17) SF 47 Lace end (another similar was also found in this context).

31. BH83 GHW1 (=17) SF 36 Large hemispherical mount. These objects may be studs, pin heads, or horse brasses.

Phase VI

32-33. BH82 +L1 (Brown layer S of curved garden wall, =615?) SF 7 & 10 Two hemispherical mounts, one pierced. See No 31.

34. BH83 TWR+ (at foot of wall 919) SF 35 Belt hasp. Similar to No 1356 in Biddle (1990), dated late 14th-early 15th century.

Late

35. BH82 +L1 (=770) SF 4 Double oval frame of buckle.

Unphased

36. BH79 "Albert's" (Unstratified) ?Swivel from horse harness.

Lead

The majority of lead artefacts were pieces of window comes and lead sheet, and musket balls. One piece of came is illustrated, the others being of the same type (561, 396, 105, 149, 953, 968, 0503), including one which had melted (118). Some of the cut lead strips may also have been parts of windows (561, 396, 557, 105, 118, 152, 615, 953). Two folded lead sheets were found, one with an iron accretion (902), and one pierced in three places (756), prob-

ably originally used as roofing material. The musket balls varied in size from 10mm (72), through 13mm (124, 130), 15mm (above 951, 953), 16mm (124, 130), 17 and 18mm (0512), to 20mm (124). One piece of crumpled lead appeared to be a fired musket ball (90).

Phase IIIb

37. BH81 561 Window came with H-section. The quarry would be c2mm thick. Similar fragments were found in contexts dating to Phase IV and later.

Phase V-VI

38. BH82 +L1 (under cobbles, =114?) Six-pointed star or flower, possibly used as decoration. No evidence for pin or fastening attachments which might suggest it was a badge. Similar (8-pointed) objects were found at Clarendon Palace, Wiltshire, where they were interpreted as part of a design commissioned by Henry III for one of his chambers (Steane, 1984).

39. BH83 GHW1 (=17) SF 25 Plumb weight.

THE DITCH

(Figs 61 Nos 40-63 and 62 Nos 64-67)

Iron

The iron finds from the west ditch consisted of 45 nails, 6 fragments, 11 staples, 1 wire, 1 washer 26mm in diameter, a curved staple, a sheet fragment and one penknife.

The finds from the east ditch were more interesting, and included a padlock and hasp (454), three cannonball fragments (460, 462, 0522), spurs (461), buckles (461, 0502), knives (461, 0502), and a sickle fragment (0502). Large quantities of nails and other ironmongery were collected.

Knives

40. BH79 155 Fragment of iron blade between two copper alloy strips, with fragments of shell attached. Probably a penknife, ?modern.

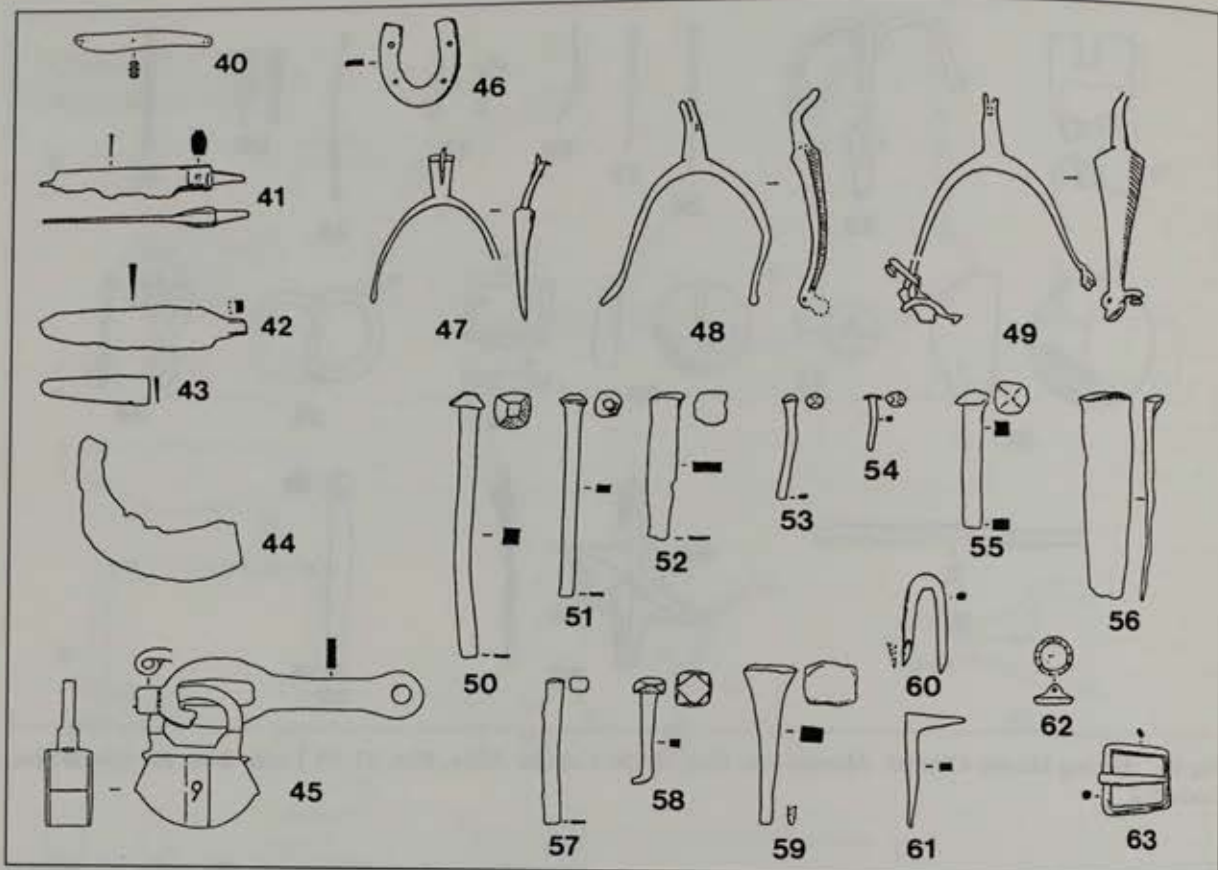


Fig 61 Basing House Citadel. Metalwork. Nos 40-63 Iron from the Ditch, Scale 1:4.

41. BH82 461 Part of knife blade, bolster and tang.
 42. BH82 0502 Knife blade and square-section bolster.
 43. BH82 0502 Part of knife blade, possibly modern.

Tools

44. BH82 0502 Part of a sickle?

Door Furniture

- Parts of locks were found (461) too fragmentary for illustration.
 45. BH80 454 Padlock and hasp.

Horse Furniture

One modern-style horseshoe was found (461), as well as a small horseshoe (illustrated) which may have been an amulet. Three spurs were also found.

46. BH83 0501 Small horseshoe.
 47-49. BH82 461 Fragments of three rowel spurs. No 49 is similar to Moorhouse's No 83, dated to the late 16th century. No 47 is comparable with a spur found in Winchester (Cunliffe 1964, Fig 53 No 4), dated to the early 14th century.

Structural Metalwork

Large numbers of nails were collected, some of which are illustrated. There were also staples, a washer, hooks, and stakes. One of the nails (0530) was still embedded in plaster/stone. The nails illustrated, together with those from the gatehouse area, represent most of the types found in recent excavations.

50. BH79 140 Long nail with square faceted head.
 51. BH79 140 Two long nails with rounded pyramidal heads (the one not illustrated was slightly longer).
 52. BH79 140 Wide flat nail with square head.
 53. BH79 140 Three small nails with oval faceted heads. A similar one was also found in context 156.

54. BH79 140 Three small nails with square shafts and flat hexagonal heads.
 55. BH79 156 Thick nail with square faceted head.
 56. BH82 461 Wide flat nail with rectangular head.
 57. BH83 0501 Rectangular wedge-shaped nail with square head.
 58. BH82 0507 Short nail with square faceted head, similar to Moorhouse's Nos 94-95.
 59. BH83 0523 Tapering nail with large square head.
 60. BH79 140 Small curved staple with round section.
 61. BH82 0515 Small stake or hook, similar to Moorhouse's Nos 116-117.

Military Equipment

Fragments of three cannonballs were found (not illustrated).

Miscellaneous

Apart from the illustrated items, various pieces of wire (140, 0502), a curved handle with round section, sheets, and a modern meat skewer (all 0502) were also found.
 62. BH79 140 A small button with an iron back, copper alloy edging and glass centre. Possibly modern.
 63. BH82 461 Square buckle. Two others were also found. This type of buckle may form part of horse tack, as a large number of them were found in the stables area of the New House, excavated in 1990. The fact that there are three in the east ditch, and none elsewhere, may suggest that at least some of the material found there was derived from the New House.

Copper Alloy

Very few copper alloy items were found in the ditch. Two buttons (140) were probably of late date (one was brass). A large pin or skewer (452) with a heavy spherical head apparently cemented onto it may also be of brass, but its purpose and date are unknown. A

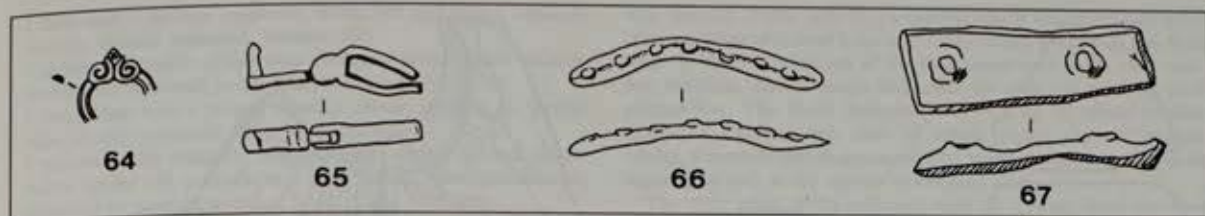


Fig 62 Basing House Citadel. Metalwork. Nos 64–65 Copper Alloy, Nos 66–67 Lead, from the Ditch, Scale 1:2.

modern double-ended clock key also came from this context. A possible curtain ring (0502) was also found. Two other items are illustrated.

64. BH82 462 Part of a cast buckle with curvilinear decoration. Similar to Moorhouse No 170.

65. BH82 461 ?Swivel with pendant, from horse harness?

Lead

The majority of lead artefacts from the ditch were window strips (461, 462, 0501, 0502, 0530), but there were also sheet fragments (0502, 0522), musket balls (9mm 140; 17mm 461 & 463; 18mm 461), fired shot (0502), melted fragments (461, 0501, 0502, 0530), and 'ingate sprues' (462, 0502). One piece may have been a fragment of slag (0502). This, together with the melted pieces, the ingate sprues and the cut sheets, is clear evidence for the production of musket balls on site using roofing lead. This is mentioned in a contemporary newspaper, *Mercurius Aulicus*, for November 16th 1643 (Adair 1981, 28), which states that 'the ladies and gentlewomen [were] as earnest as any in melting lead to set forward the work'. Other documentary sources describe the stripping of any remaining lead from the House in the plunder which followed the siege.

66. BH82 461 "Ingate sprue", probably the waste from the top of a small musket ball mould.

67. BH82 0519 Rectangular piece of lead pierced in two places. Possibly a fishing line weight.

COINS AND TOKENS

GATEHOUSE, RINGWORK TERMINALS AND DITCH

Only eleven coins or tokens were recovered from the gatehouse and ditch area. Those which can be identified are all of 16th century or later date. Coins were identified from Grueber (1899) and jettons with the aid of Barnard (1916).

Coins

It was possible to identify only three of the coins. One, from the upper layers of the west ditch (BH79 140), was a George III penny. The second was an Elizabeth silver sixpence dated 1568 in poor condition (BH80 402). The only gold coin from the excavations came from the primary fill of the east ditch (BH81 460), and was identified as a Charles I unite, in fair condition. It was issued in 1640–41.

Jettons

The earliest jetton from the site was from a Phase II–III context (BH79 141). This has been identified as the trimmed centre part of an Anglo-Gallic jetton, 11–12mm in diameter. The obverse was very worn but may have been a fleur-de-lys, whilst the reverse showed a long cross cutting an inner circle cantoned by groups of three pellets (similar to Barnard, Anglo-Gallic jetton No 45). Probably 14th century or earlier.

Five jettons were identified as Nuremberg *Rechenpfennige*. These were as follows:

1. BH82 +L1 (770) Diameter 25mm. Obverse: three crowns and three *lys* around a rose, GLICK:KVMPT:VON:GOI. Reverse:

Reichsapfel in trilobe; HANS rosette SCHVLTES NOR. As Barnard Pl 33, No 82. Maker dated to c1550–74, but could be later.

2. BH82 0514 As 1, corroded and bent.

3. BH82 0527 As 1, bent and ?cut (piece missing).

4. BH80 163 Diameter 22–23mm. Obverse: three crowns and three *lys* around a rose, WOLF LAVFER IN NVRNBERG RECH. Reverse: Reichsapfel in trilobe; rosette GOTTES.SEGEN. MACHT.REICH rosette. 16th–early 17th century.

5. BH79 120 Not cleaned, but probably as 4. 21mm diameter.

There was also a small worn copper alloy disc, probably the middle portion of a Nuremberg jetton (c16mm diameter). It had been trimmed down, perhaps to be passed off as a coin or for some other purpose.

Three of these jettons were recovered from the ditch (2–4), one was in a Phase V context (5), and one was from a Late context (1). The cut-down token was from the east ditch.

MISCELLANEOUS SMALL FINDS

GATEHOUSE, RINGWORK TERMINALS AND DITCH

(Fig 63 Nos 1–5)

Stone

Very few stone objects were found. Two small round stones (one 22mm in diameter) may have been used as shot. Both came from the south room of the east gatehouse, one from chalk above the cross wall footing (124, Phase IV), the other the brick drain (130, Phase IIIb). Both were found in association with lead shot.

Pre-Phase I

1. BH82 L4(S) (=761) Fragment of quern stone. Dark coloured medium-grained sandstone. Unknown source.

Phase IV

2. BH79 146 Fragment of whetstone. Same stone as No 1.

3. BH79 146 Fragment of millstone. Deposits of mortar on its upper surface. Dark coloured fine-grained vesicular basalt.

Phase V

4. BH82 0505 Half an oval jet bead.

Worked Bone or Antler

Only three bone objects were found. Two of these, a fragment of comb (402) and a small ?pin head (458), came from the ditch. The third, a crossbow nut, was found in the H-shaped feature in the gatehouse passage (547). Three iron knives had bone handles (see IRON).

Phase V

5. BH82 +L1 F1 (=547) SF 5 Antler crossbow nut. Very similar to an example illustrated in Biddle (1990) by A G Credland, who explains the use in detail.

Miscellaneous

A few pieces of burnt material and slag were collected. Two small pieces from the lowest levels of the west gatehouse (971) may be

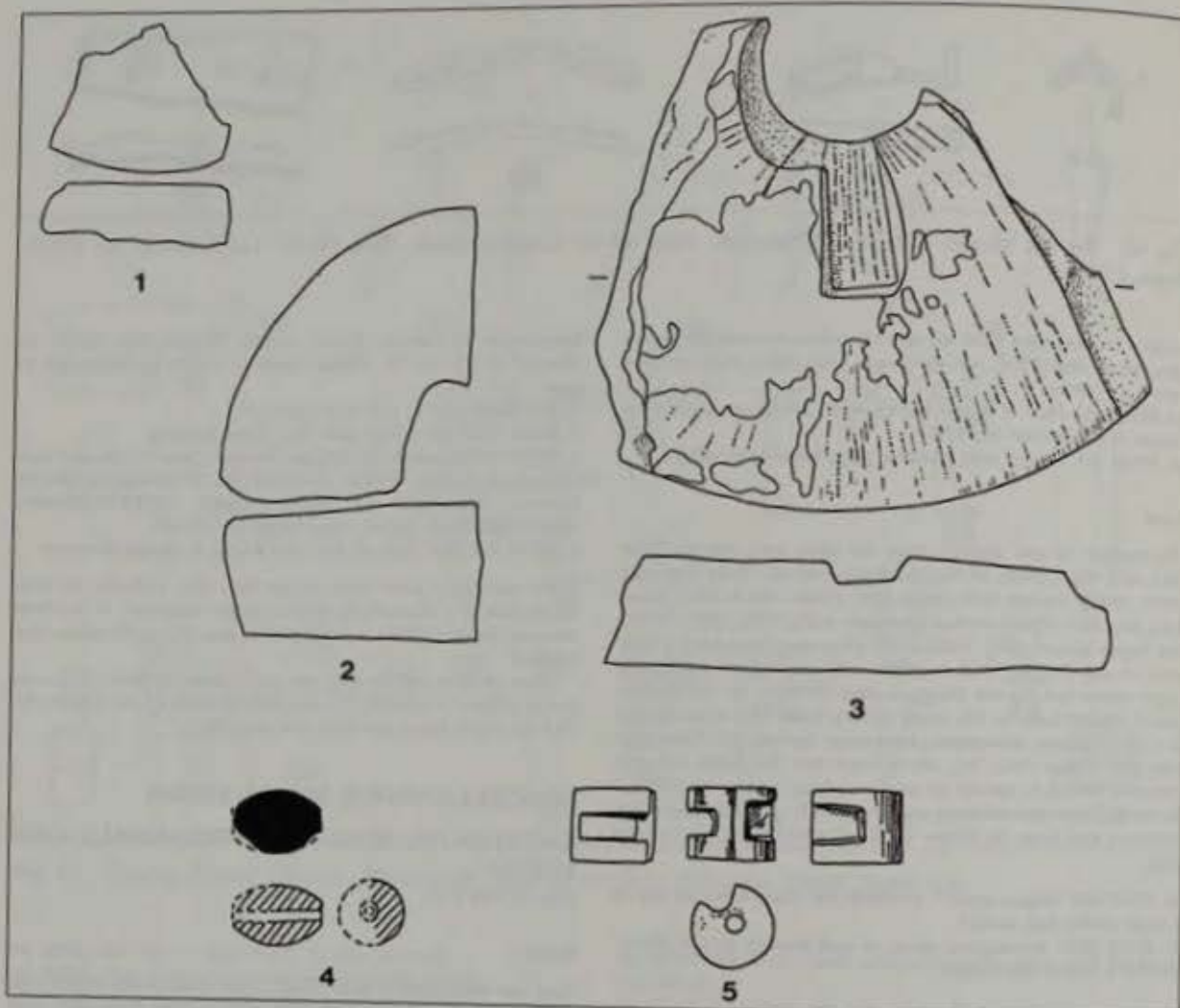


Fig 63 Basing House Citadel. Miscellaneous Small Finds.. Nos 1-3 Stone, Scale 1:4; Nos 4-5 Jet and Antler, from the Gatehouse and Ditch, Scale 1:2.

burnt brick. Two pieces of slag were found in the east ditch (0509), and four unidentified burnt fragments also came from that area (0502). Other burnt material which has been identified (eg. pottery, ceramic building material, glass) has been included in the appropriate section. Slag lumps were also found in association with iron (726) and lead (0502).

FLINT

GATEHOUSE, RINGWORK TERMINALS AND DITCH

(Identification by Peter Makey, CAS).

Four gatehouse contexts contained worked flint. Two pieces (a blade and a secondary flake) were recovered from the upper layers of the west gatehouse (17, Phase V), another secondary flake came from the fill of a Phase IV posthole (517), and a scraper was recovered from a Late rubble deposit (136). The majority of pieces came from the lowest levels of the west side (971, Pre-Phase I), where a total of 48 flints was collected.

The material is predominantly olive grey to dark grey coloured gravel flint which has been struck using a hard hammer technique, and there is a mixture of fine and coarse grained types. Most of the pieces appear to exhibit a light degree of post-depositional damage. Patination ranges from cloudy grey through blue-grey to white.

Tools identified included a microlith, a piercer, 7 blades and 3 bladelets. In addition, there were two notched flakes and one with denticulate retouch. The blades were a mixed assortment and may not all have the same origin. Most of the other finds were secondary and tertiary flakes. Dating was difficult, but it is thought that most pieces were early Neolithic with possible early-middle Bronze Age elements. There was also one possible gun flint (other finds from this layer include a piece of 17th century pottery, although the majority is of Roman to medieval date). The presence of tools suggests occupation of the site at an early date. One tertiary flake was also found in the west ditch (407).

Phase Pre-I

BH83 B2 L4 (971)

- 3 primary flakes (1 densely patinated).
- 1 secondary flake with possible use retouch on dorsal right side.
- 1 secondary flake with irregular distal-ventral retouch on flake hinge, densely patinated.
- 1 secondary flake with notch on dorsal left, moderately patinated.
- 13 secondary flakes (1 broken, 5 densely and 1 moderately patinated).
- 3 secondary/tertiary flakes (all broken, 2 densely patinated).
- 5 tertiary flakes (1 broken, 2 lightly patinated, 2 bashed).
- 1 miscellaneous flake with minimal retouch on ventral right, moderately patinated.
- 1 miscellaneous retouched piece with dorsal left and right semi-abrupt/irregular retouch, moderately patinated.

- 1 flake with 2 notches (opposite, dorsal left and right), minimal retouch, densely patinated. Neolithic/BA.
- 1 piercer (secondary flake) with moderate dorsal distal retouch forming the (blunted) point. Neolithic (or BA?).
- 1 denticulate with 4 points, notched abrupt retouch on ventral right, densely patinated flake. Neolithic/BA.
- 1 microlith with obliquely blunted point, abrupt retouch proximal to medial left, proximal and distal breaks, densely patinated, truncated by post-depositional break. Later Mesolithic.
- 3 bladelets (all broken), light edge damage, heavily patinated.
- 7 blades (6 broken, 4 densely patinated, 2 moderate, 1 light), 1 typically Neolithic?
- 1 possible early gun flint, broken, crude, burnt.
- 2 small non-bulbar chunks, 1 densely patinated.
- 1 burnt unclassifiable ?core fragment.
- 1 heavily patinated ?natural.

Phase IV

BH81 517

- Retouched ?secondary flake.

Phase V?

BH83 GHW L1 (17)

- 1 broken secondary flake.
- 1 blade with dorsal scars, proximal break, distal hinge termination.

Late

BH79 136

- 1 scraper.

Unphased - West Ditch

BH81 407

- 1 tertiary flake with hinge fracture.

SHELL**GATEHOUSE, RINGWORK TERMINALS AND DITCH**

The majority of finds in this category were oysters (*Ostrea edulis*), 339 coming from the gatehouse, and 57 from the west rampart. They were collected from contexts of all phases from Pre-I to Late, although over 80% (272 shells) were from Phase IV and later contexts. As there are no figures available for the 1982-3 excavations, however, during which some of the earlier contexts and layers were investigated, these statistics cannot be regarded as conclusive. The only other shells from the gatehouse area were also of edible shellfish, a mussel and winkle from Phase IIIb, and a cockle from Phase V.

Large quantities of shell were recovered from context 954 on the

west rampart (Phase IIIb-IV), a context which also contained quite large amounts of animal bone and 16th century pottery. If this food waste is related to the use of the flues uncovered in the west rampart building, then it seems likely that the area was used for food preparation. The shells included over 2.5 kg of edible winkles (*Littorina littorea*), two pairs of edible cockle shells (*Cardium edule*), 5 mussels (*Modiolus modiolus*) and 8 common snails (*Helix aspera*), as well as the oysters mentioned above.

The only other shells collected were 21 oysters from the west ditch, a whelk (*Buccinum undatum*) from the east ditch, and a quantity of oysters from the kitchen area.

ANIMAL BONE**GATEHOUSE, RINGWORK TERMINALS AND DITCH**

Reasonable quantities of animal bone were recovered from the gatehouse, ditch and kitchen in 1979-83 (18 boxes), but only finds from securely dated contexts were submitted to Adrienne Powell of the Centre for Human Ecology & Environment, Southampton for analysis. An exception was made for finds from the Kitchen range (see Chapter 6).

A total of 1725 fragments came from the gatehouse. Although a proportion of the bone was in excellent condition, the bulk was in average to poor condition. Overall, only 24% of the sample was identifiable, a relatively low proportion for a Medieval and Post-Medieval assemblage.

Of the bones that could be categorised, a high proportion were of cattle and sheep. In Phases I-II, pig was also present, as well as red or fallow deer (*Cervus elaphus/Dama dama*), rabbit and bird. The Tudor to Civil War layers (Phases III to V) contained the most bones. Cattle and sheep were again the main domestic animals identified, with lower numbers of pig, and small amounts of horse bone. Roe deer (*Capreolus capreolus*), red/fallow deer, small rodent, domestic fowl and other bird, frog/toad (*Rana/Bufo*) and fish were also represented. Rabbit (*Oryctolagus cuniculus*) was particularly numerous in Phase V levels, but the good condition of the rabbit bones, both in the gatehouse and the kitchen, suggested that they were intrusive. In Phase VI layers, there was little bone, the identifiable material consisting mainly of sheep, pig, rabbit and domestic fowl.

Burnt bone was present in three gatehouse contexts, and gnawed bone was common. Some ageing information was available from the sample, and evidence of butchery was frequent, mostly in the form of chop marks. However, the small size of the identifiable sample precluded further analysis.

Archives: A1979.10B; A1983.13

The first of these is the fact that the...
The second is the fact that the...
The third is the fact that the...

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO PRESS

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO PRESS

The first of these is the fact that the...
The second is the fact that the...
The third is the fact that the...

The first of these is the fact that the...
The second is the fact that the...
The third is the fact that the...

The first of these is the fact that the...
The second is the fact that the...
The third is the fact that the...

The first of these is the fact that the...
The second is the fact that the...
The third is the fact that the...

The first of these is the fact that the...
The second is the fact that the...
The third is the fact that the...

The first of these is the fact that the...
The second is the fact that the...
The third is the fact that the...

The first of these is the fact that the...
The second is the fact that the...
The third is the fact that the...

The first of these is the fact that the...
The second is the fact that the...
The third is the fact that the...

The first of these is the fact that the...
The second is the fact that the...
The third is the fact that the...

The first of these is the fact that the...
The second is the fact that the...
The third is the fact that the...

The first of these is the fact that the...
The second is the fact that the...
The third is the fact that the...

The first of these is the fact that the...
The second is the fact that the...
The third is the fact that the...



Fig 64. The excavation site, showing the cross-section.

The Excavation
The excavation took place in 19...
excavation of o...
into the ringwo...
pend that any...
addition, the o...
'sicker boundar...
Civil War garden...
to determine the...
bank, its date of

Chapter 6

The Citadel Kitchen Area

The Excavations and Finds



Fig 64 The Citadel Kitchen Area viewed from the north-east. A 3m length of boundary wall has been removed, but the Tudor drain remains in situ. The angled layers of the ringwork bank can be seen in the cross-section.

The Excavations

The excavation in the Kitchen Area (Fig 21, Area 2) took place in 1980. The name derives from the concentration of ovens and probable bakehouses built into the ringwork in this vicinity, and it was anticipated that any finds might reflect this function. In addition, the opportunity was taken to examine the 'cricket boundary wall' to see if it represented a post-Civil War garden phase (Phase VI). Also it was hoped to determine the original dimensions of the ringwork bank, its date of construction, and the way in which

the Tudor buildings had been inserted into it. Context numbers 300-331 were allocated to this area. The archive consists only of a basic plan and section, however, and a good photographic record. As the context sheets for this area are missing, it has not been possible to divide the results into detailed phases.

A 3m length of the 'boundary wall' was examined and removed. Immediately beside the wall was a brick-built drain of Tudor date (303). The wall itself was composed of broken brick, and sloped towards the ringwork at an angle of 15° from the vertical. The

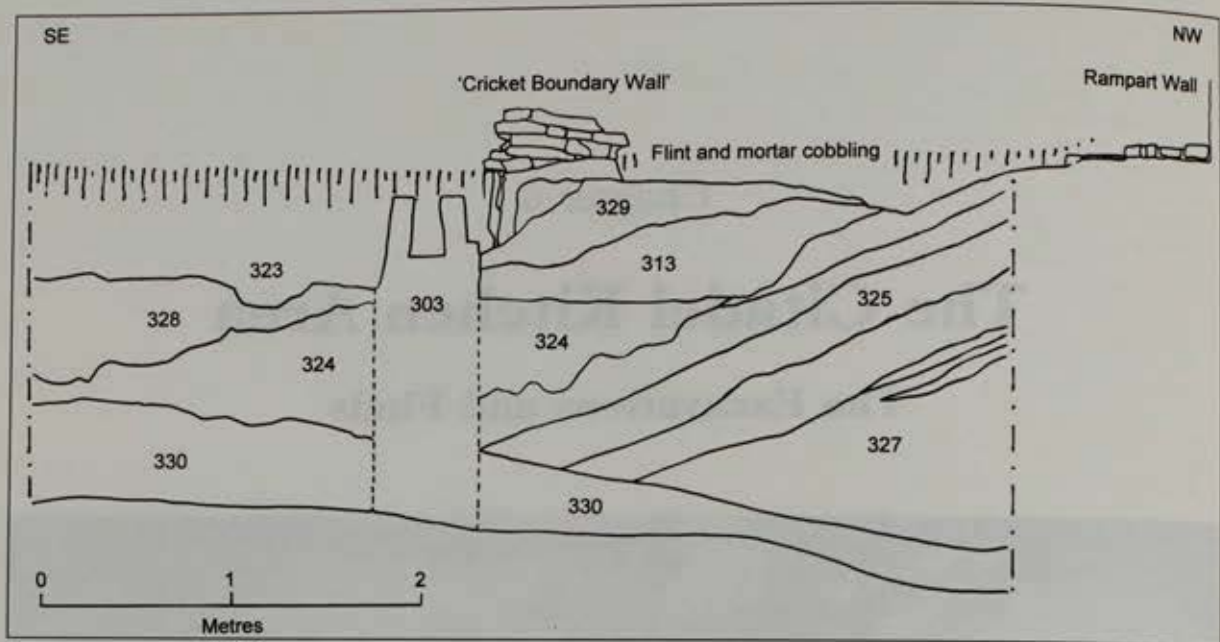


Fig 65 Basing House Citadel Kitchen Area 1980. Diagrammatic section showing the relationship of the medieval ringwork bank (325, 327) to the underlying brown clay (330) and the later features.

face on the ringwork side was rough and unfinished. These factors suggest that the area between the ringwork and the boundary wall was originally filled to support a raised walkway. The wall stood on a flint cobbled surface, which in turn lay across the stubs of Tudor walls, and presumably represents another phase in post-Civil War activity.

Beneath the cobbles was a layer of redeposited chalk (329). No dateable finds were recovered from this material, although two post-holes cut through it may tentatively be interpreted as scaffolding posts for Tudor wall construction. Beneath this chalk the core of the original ringwork bank was visible (Figs 64 & 65). In this area dark brown clay (330) exists nearly 2m below present ground level, and the bank was composed of numerous layers of clean and dirty chalk incorporating thin lenses of dark clay and flint (325, 327). It extended approximately 4m towards the centre of the Citadel, and had been cut back to the vertical for the insertion of the Tudor brick walls. The chalk removed in this operation had apparently been spread across the interior of the site (328), sealing earlier foundations. The base of a flint wall-footing so buried was noted disappearing beneath the wall of the Tudor Great Hall.

A narrow section (1.5m wide) excavated into the bank failed to produce any dateable material, but three sherds of coarse medieval pottery were recovered from the old ground surface.

The Finds

Pottery

(Fig 66 Nos 1-2)

Few sherds were recovered from the area. As with the gatehouse, medieval and later medieval pottery was found at all levels. Of the



Fig 66 Basing House Citadel. Pottery. Nos 1-2 from the Kitchen area, Scale 1:4.

other sherds, however, only three were red ware (17th/18th century types), all from one context (305). The remainder were all from stoneware bottles or jugs of Cologne/Frechen varieties. Two of these are illustrated in Fig 66.

1. BH80 300 Rim of a ?Frechen stoneware jug, light brown salt glaze externally, reduced surface, pink internal surface with some small ill-sorted iron inclusions. 16th century.
2. BH80 300 Rim of a Cologne jug, glazed clear with small patches of brown, with a stamped rose decoration, grey-buff fabric and internal grey glaze. 16th century.

Animal Bone

Many of the contexts contained animal bone. All the Kitchen Area bone was examined by Adrienne Powell of the Centre for Human Ecology & Environment, Southampton. Although the layers had not been phased, it was felt that the bone in an area associated with food production could be of significance.

In all, 521 fragments of bone were assessed. Only 8% was in a very good state of preservation, while 23% was so fragmentary as to be hardly identifiable. Just over 40% of the sample could be sorted by species. Some 56% of the identifiable domestic mammal bones were of cattle, followed by sheep (32%), pig and horse. There was, however, a high proportion of rabbit bones in the sample; including 81 bones from two partial skeletons. The condition of these bones when compared with others from the same context (300) indicates that they were intrusive, and the rabbit population at Basing House today is considerable.

Some burnt and butchered bone was present in the sample, but no further analysis was carried out because of the poor quality of the overall assemblage. Oyster shell was also present.

Other Finds

Three large slabs of limestone, presumably roof tiles, were found in one kitchen context (321). Fragments of white plaster with white-wash on one surface were found in context 315 and heat damaged flints were retained from context 330.

Conclusions

Historical sources show that the kitchen belonging to Old House was in use between 1530 and 1645

(phases III to V of the Gatehouse chronology). The finds from the 1980 excavation are consistent with the interpretation of the adjacent area, with its probable bakehouses and ovens, as the kitchen. Stoneware bottles are the most abundant pottery finds, and quantities of animal bone and other food debris were also recovered. Whether the whitewashed plaster walls and limestone tiled roof are contemporary is not clear.



Fig. 10. Plan of the kitchen area, showing the location of the excavated area.

The Excavation

The excavation was carried out in the winter of 1980-81. The plan of the site is shown in Fig. 10. The plan shows the approximate location of the kitchen area, which was bounded on the north by the wall of the gatehouse and on the south by the wall of the Old House. The excavation was carried out in the area between these two walls. The plan shows the location of the excavated area, which was bounded on the north by the wall of the gatehouse and on the south by the wall of the Old House. The excavation was carried out in the area between these two walls.

Interpretation

The plan shows the location of the kitchen area, which was bounded on the north by the wall of the gatehouse and on the south by the wall of the Old House. The excavation was carried out in the area between these two walls. The plan shows the location of the excavated area, which was bounded on the north by the wall of the gatehouse and on the south by the wall of the Old House. The excavation was carried out in the area between these two walls.

The first part of the ...

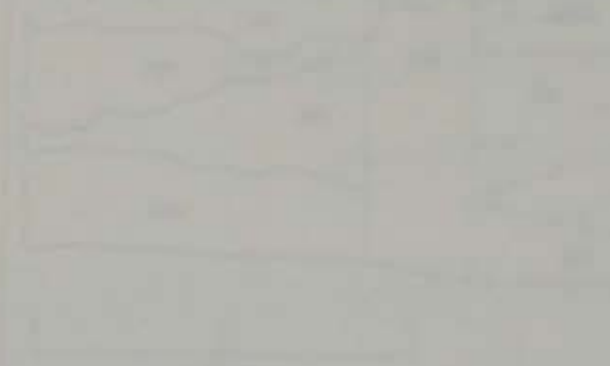


Figure 1: A line graph showing data trends over time. The x-axis is labeled 'Year' and the y-axis is labeled 'Value'. The graph shows a fluctuating line that generally trends upwards from left to right.

The second part of the ...

The third part of the ...

The fourth part of the ...

The Excavation

In 1988, a ...

The second part of the ...

The third part of the ...

The fourth part of the ...

The fifth part of the ...

The sixth part of the ...

The seventh part of the ...

The eighth part of the ...

Fig 67

The Excavation

In 1988, a ...

Chapter 7

The Citadel Bank

The Excavations and Finds

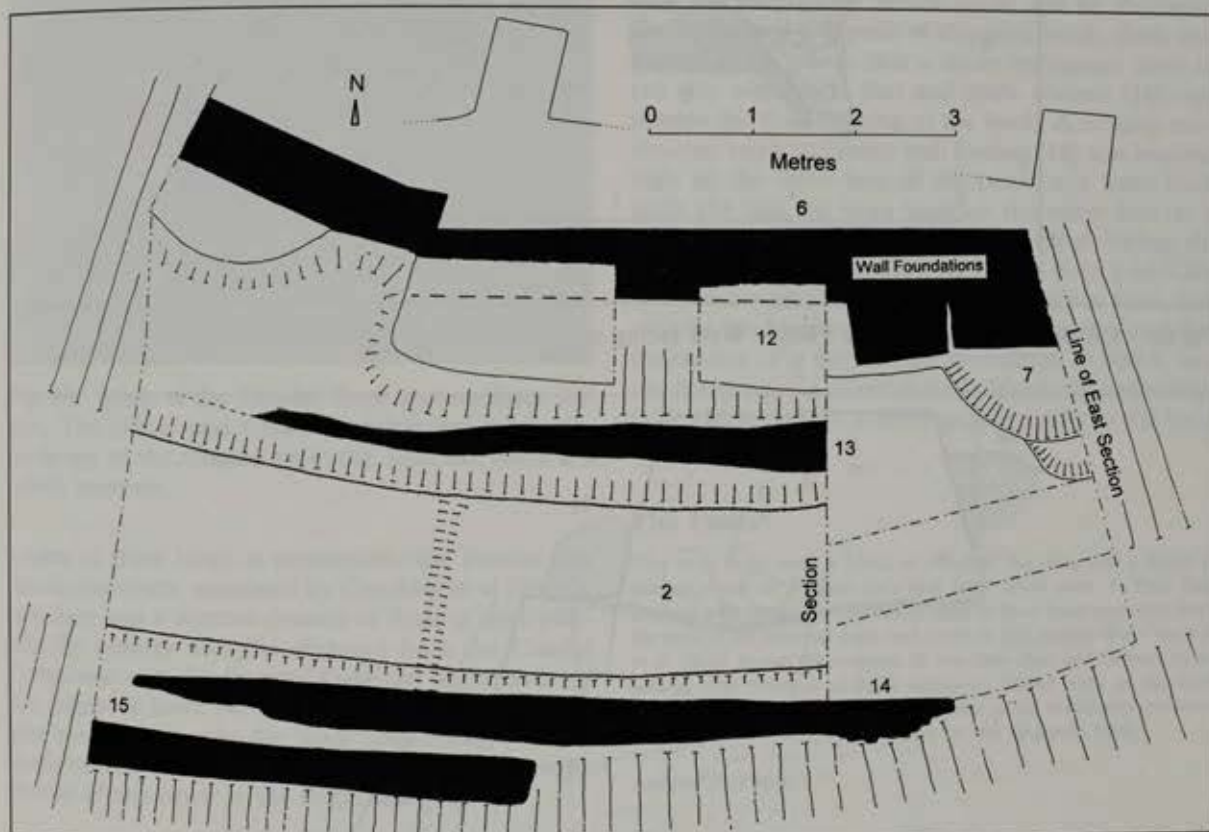


Fig 67 Citadel Bank Excavation 1988 – General Plan.

The Excavations

In 1988, a landslip occurred over an 8m length on the south side of the ringwork (Fig 21, Area 3). This offered the opportunity to determine how much of the bank belonged to the pre-Tudor (medieval) enceinte; how much, if any, was the result of Civil War engineering, and how much the product of post-Civil War gardening activity. A 2m wide section was cut for this purpose at the east end of the affected area (Fig 67). Removal of the turf and topsoil (1) revealed evidence for three main periods of activity: medieval, Tudor, and post-Civil War, with a number of minor phases also evident.

Interpretation

Medieval

In this area the ringwork bank appears to have been built in two phases. Initially it was raised to a height of 5m above the current internal ground surface, and was composed of fine grained chalk (4) and red brown clay with flints (5). A thin occupation soil (3) then developed on the level summit of this bank. Subsequently the bank was increased in height by a further 1.2m, the material again being fine-grained chalk (2). Finds were limited to a fragment of combed flue tile and a samian sherd, both from layer 2. The

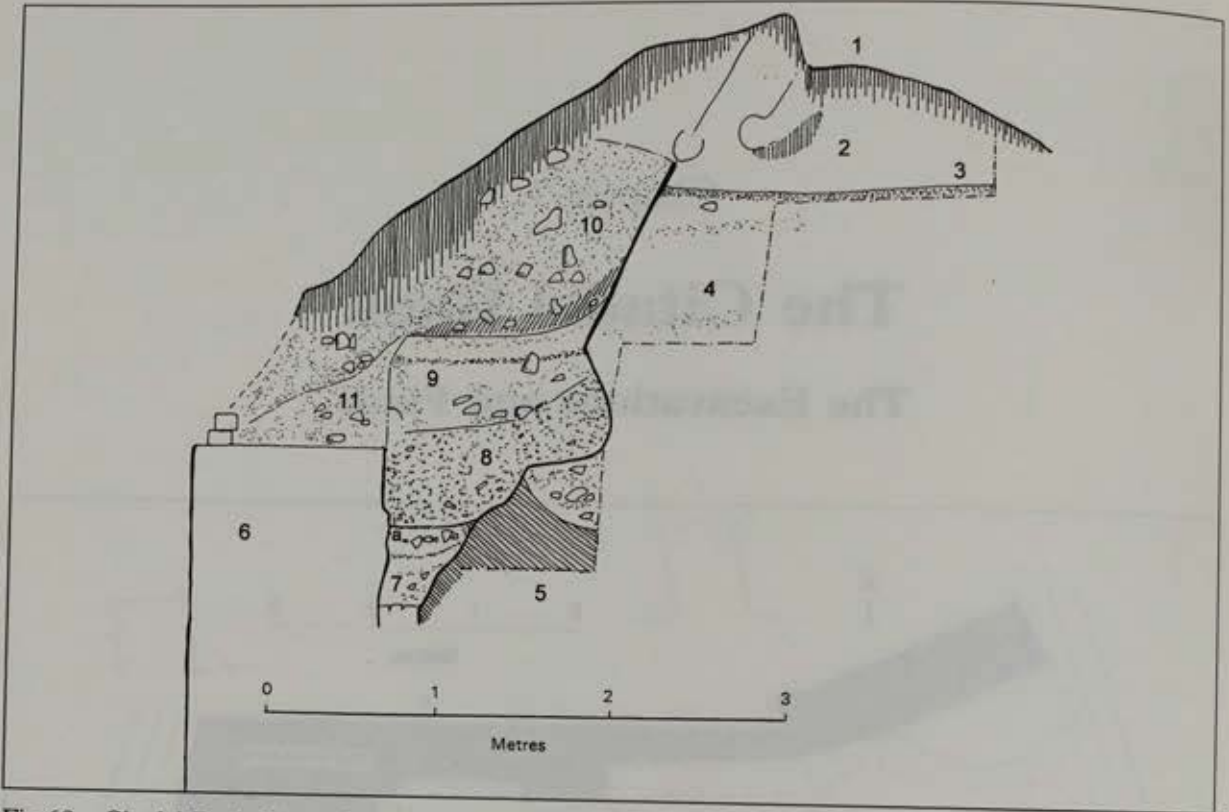


Fig 68 Citadel Bank Excavation 1988 – West facing section.

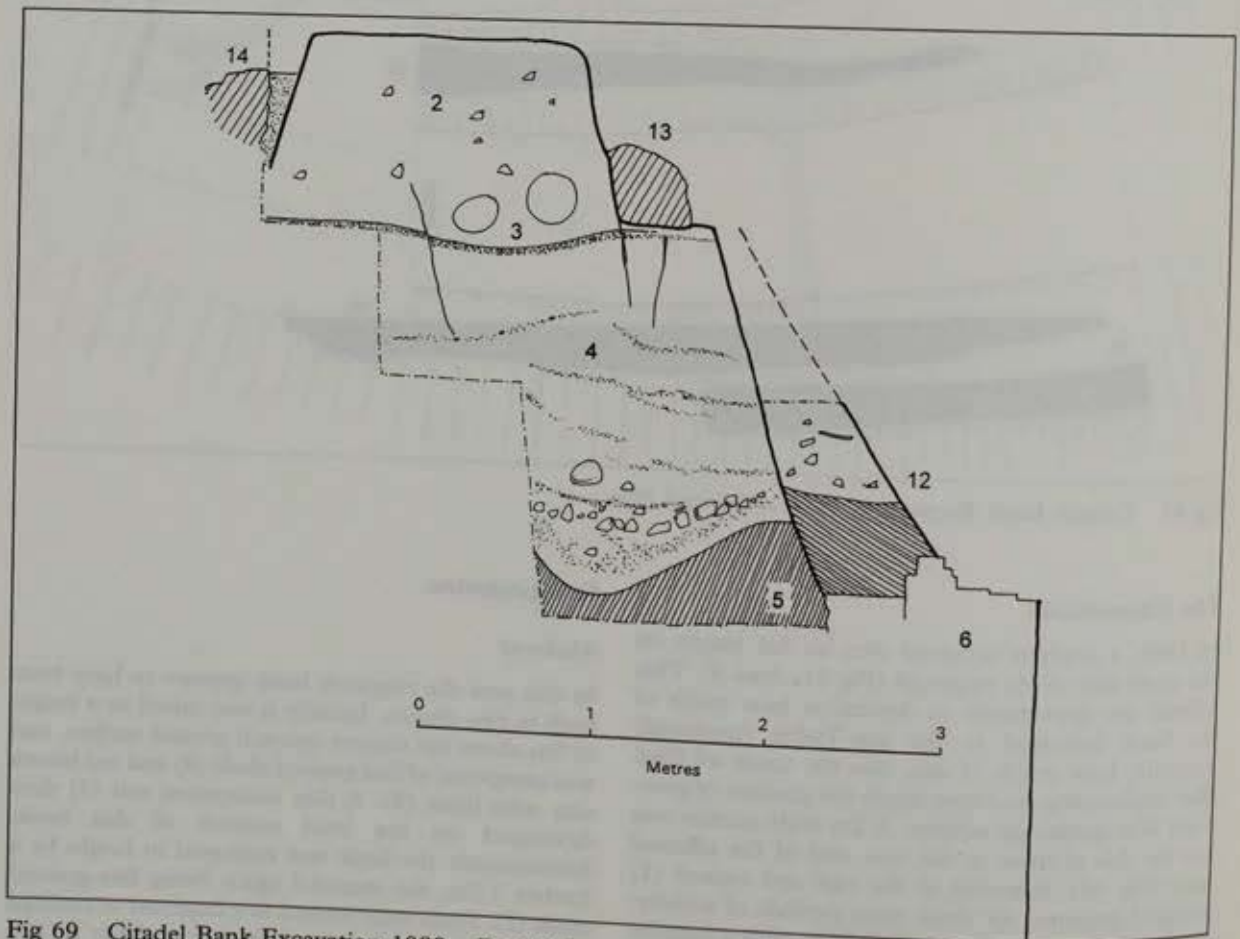


Fig 69 Citadel Bank Excavation 1988 – East facing section.



Fig 70 View of the Citadel Bank section from the east. The old ground surface is visible just below the midpoint of the ranging pole; the adjacent voids are rabbit burrows.

source of these items is presumably the Roman site just to the south, examined by Combley et al (1968), but there was a general absence of finds of later periods. By analogy with the evidence from the Citadel Gatehouse and the Postern Gate the main body of the ringwork bank (4) must be medieval in date. It also seems likely that the bank heightening (2) is a medieval rather a Civil War addition as it was totally devoid of any brick or tile fragments (Fig 70).

Tudor

A massive brick wall (6) was built on the inside of the ringwork bank. It ranges from 0.8m to 1.2m in

width and still stands to a height of 2.3m, although it has lost at least 0.8m of its upper levels. The plastered inner face is also much obscured by 19th century walls and buttresses. The wall had been built up against the medieval bank. On the east facing section (Fig 69) it was flush with the surviving rampart, but on the opposite side of the cut (Fig 68) it diverged sufficiently for layers of deliberate infill (7, 8 and 9) to have been necessary. Within this material, trodden surfaces (eg 7a) could be discerned. The wall clearly belongs to William Paulet's 16th century renovation of the Citadel.

Civil War and Later

The brick wall 6 suffered substantial robbing of its upper courses. In the area of the west facing section (Fig 68) the robber trench could still be discerned and contained a deposit of clay with brick, chalk and mortar (11). Above this a more variegated layer of red clay with brick, flint and chalk content (10) represents the final capping of the bank. A roughly constructed brick and stone wall footing (13) was inserted high on the inner face of the bank, and weak brick walls (14 and 15) were built on the outer face. It is possible that these features were added during the siege, but more likely that they result from post-Civil War landscaping in the late 17th century or later. One definite landscaping activity evident in the east facing section (Fig 69) was the demolition of wall 6, and the dumping of a mixed deposit of red clay and rubble (12) which created a more gentle profile to the bank in this locality.

The Finds

The only finds were a piece of combed flue tile, and a sherd of samian, both of Roman date and both from layer 2. This fine-grained well consolidated chalk is likely to have been excavated from the area of the external ditch and it was in this locality that Combley et al (ibid) found the remains of late Iron Age and Roman occupation. The absence of brick debris or Tudor finds in the bank make-up (layers 4, 3, 2) would appear to be conclusive evidence for a pre-Tudor construction date for the ringwork bank.

Archive: A1988.41

Fig. 1. The effect of the grain size on the strength of the ceramic material. The strength increases with the grain size up to a certain point and then decreases. The grain size is measured in micrometers.

The grain size of the ceramic material is an important factor in determining its strength. The strength of the material increases with the grain size up to a certain point and then decreases. This is because the grain boundaries act as barriers to the movement of dislocations. As the grain size increases, the number of grain boundaries per unit volume decreases, and the strength of the material increases. However, if the grain size becomes too large, the material becomes more susceptible to fracture, and the strength decreases.

The grain size of the ceramic material is an important factor in determining its strength. The strength of the material increases with the grain size up to a certain point and then decreases. This is because the grain boundaries act as barriers to the movement of dislocations. As the grain size increases, the number of grain boundaries per unit volume decreases, and the strength of the material increases. However, if the grain size becomes too large, the material becomes more susceptible to fracture, and the strength decreases.

The grain size of the ceramic material is an important factor in determining its strength. The strength of the material increases with the grain size up to a certain point and then decreases. This is because the grain boundaries act as barriers to the movement of dislocations. As the grain size increases, the number of grain boundaries per unit volume decreases, and the strength of the material increases. However, if the grain size becomes too large, the material becomes more susceptible to fracture, and the strength decreases.

The grain size of the ceramic material is an important factor in determining its strength. The strength of the material increases with the grain size up to a certain point and then decreases. This is because the grain boundaries act as barriers to the movement of dislocations. As the grain size increases, the number of grain boundaries per unit volume decreases, and the strength of the material increases. However, if the grain size becomes too large, the material becomes more susceptible to fracture, and the strength decreases.



The graph shows the relationship between grain size and strength. The x-axis is labeled 'Grain Size (micrometers)' and the y-axis is labeled 'Strength (MPa)'. The curve shows a peak in strength at a certain grain size, after which the strength decreases as the grain size continues to increase.

The graph shows the relationship between grain size and strength. The x-axis is labeled 'Grain Size (micrometers)' and the y-axis is labeled 'Strength (MPa)'. The curve shows a peak in strength at a certain grain size, after which the strength decreases as the grain size continues to increase.

The graph shows the relationship between grain size and strength. The x-axis is labeled 'Grain Size (micrometers)' and the y-axis is labeled 'Strength (MPa)'. The curve shows a peak in strength at a certain grain size, after which the strength decreases as the grain size continues to increase.

The Ex...
The exist...
of the C...
1966 has...
anticipat...
walk of...
entire...
and in...
the gate...
upl mo...
that a...
one part...
The ob...
fifteen...
and east...
down to...
The work...
lose int...
several...
sented...
Tuder or...
In cont...
an surviv...
Reference...
surface...
a cross...
ed (5) a...
studied...
trial, four...
significanc...

Interprete...
Six phases...
recognized...
Material...
In the mod...
represented...
with main...
length, and...
been modif...
and a small...
rearrange...

Chapter 8

The Citadel Postern Gate

The Excavations and Finds

The Excavations

The existence of a postern gate on the eastern side of the Citadel has been long suspected. In March 1966 heavy rain caused a landslip in this location and subsequent investigation (see Chapter 3 p30) revealed walls of stone and brick, flanking an apparent entrance through the ringwork. As the work was limited in extent, the full sequence and significance of the gate was not established. Further slippage encouraged more work in 1983, but it was not until 1991 that a concerted attempt was made to reveal the definitive picture (Fig 21, Area 4).

The objects of the 1991 excavation were to remove fallen material, create vertical sections to the north and east, and examine the sequence by excavating down to the surface of the gate passage (Figs 71–73). The work involved the removal of several layers of loose infill from the passageway itself (9 and 14) and several layers of consolidated material (4) which represented the deliberate narrowing of the gate in the Tudor or Stuart period.

In contrast with the Citadel gatehouse, there was no surviving metal surface in the passageway. Reference to the walls indicated where the original surface would have been, however, and beyond this a cross section revealed a brick-built drainage channel (5) and a shallow silt-filled gully (8). It also resulted in the unexpected discovery of a male human skull, found inverted in the gully silts (Fig 74). The significance of this find is discussed below.

Interpretation

Six phases of construction and modification were recognised, as follows:

Medieval

In the medieval period the south side of the gate was represented by a substantial wall of mortared flint with malmstone quoins (1). It was at least 5m in length, and 2.5m in height, although this may have been modified in Tudor times (see below). To the east a small section was excavated behind the flint revetment, and the bank material here (15) was

almost pure chalk, identical to that noted in the 1988 rampart cut to the south (see p93).

Tudor

During the major refurbishment of the Citadel the postern was narrowed, and its passageway lengthened. This was achieved by the construction of a substantial brick wall to the north (2), and the addition of a brick wall (3) to the south. The north wall had been subsequently slighted, but it was clear that it revetted a bank of mortar, broken tile, brick and chalk (4). This apparently filled much of what must have been a substantial Medieval gateway in this area. The brick-built drain (5) led out almost centrally through the new gate passage (Fig 75).

The south wall survives to a height of 3.6m and has a 'beam slot' 0.4m in depth at a height of 2.5m from the ground, which continues in the brick capping on top of the medieval wall. A stair tower (6), now represented only by its foundations, may have been part of this complex.

Later Tudor

The inner opening to the Tudor gate was originally splayed, but it was modified and narrowed and turned into a doorway, rather than a gate by the addition of stub walls (7a and 7b). The date of this alteration is not clear, but it may be linked to the construction of the New House.

Civil War

As noted above, no convincing road or floor surface survived in the gateway. One linear feature was visible, however, the small gully (8) where the skull was found.

Post Civil War

Some time after the assault on Basing House in 1645, the Tudor brick wall on the north side of the gate was partly demolished, and the passageway filled with brick rubble (9). Soon afterwards insubstantial brick walls (10, 11 and 13) were constructed to allow the complete in-filling of this area (14). This activity

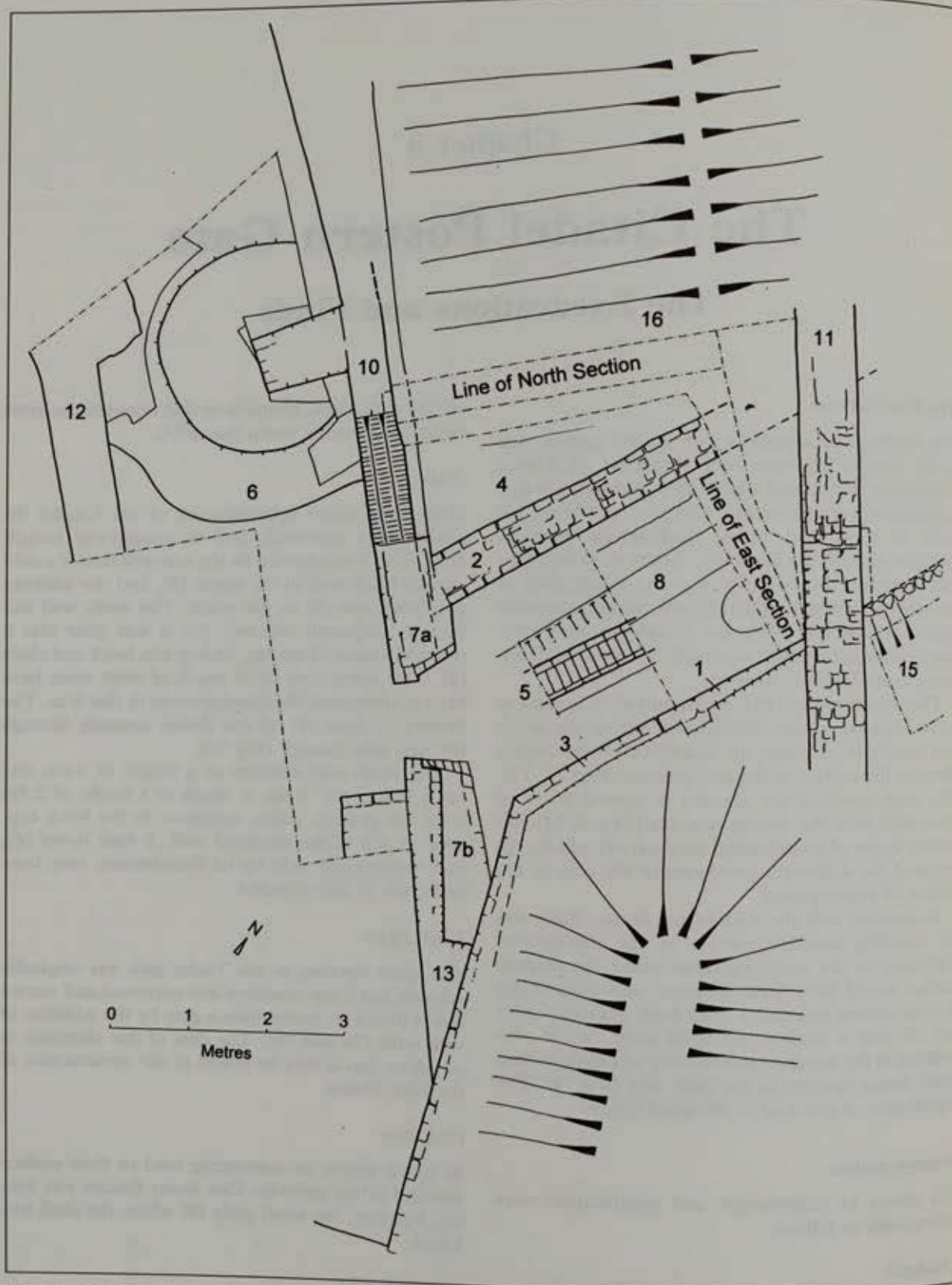


Fig 71 Citadel Postern Gate Excavation 1991 - Plan.

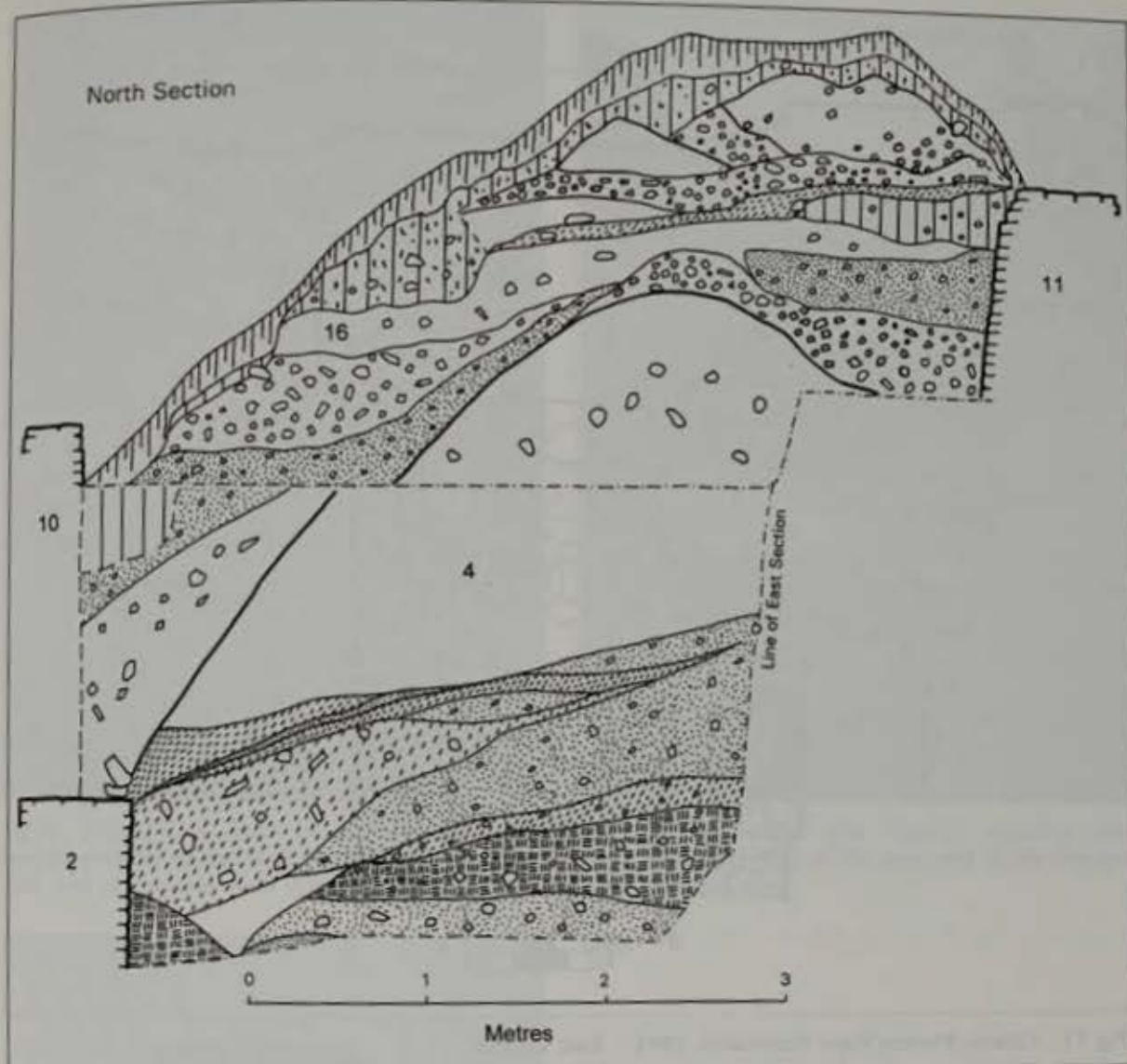


Fig 72 Citadel Postern Gate Excavation 1991 – North section.

would most comfortably fit in the 'garden phase' of the later 17th century. The wall (12) at the front of the stair tower base probably also belongs to this phase.

Bank Capping

A further capping of 1.5m to the bank (16) may have been added subsequently.

The Finds

Finds were few. Pottery sherds, tile fragments, animal bones and nails appeared in small quantities, but fragments of dressed stone were more frequently encountered amongst the brick and mortar rubble (4). The most significant of the bone finds was the human skull, whilst the most notable of the stone finds were two life-sized sculpted heads.

The Human Skull (Fig 76)

As noted above, a human cranium and fragments of cervical vertebrae were recovered from the fill of a gully located inside the Postern Gate. The remains were in fair condition, although an attempt to reconstruct the skull showed it to be slightly deformed by soil pressure. Most of the skull was present, although part of the right side was missing. The mandible was lost, presumably after deposition, because the skull was found resting on its superior surface. The first two cervical vertebrae were almost intact and there was a fragment of the third.

The skull was fairly robust, showing prominent brow ridges and quite well-defined muscle markings on the temporal lines and occipital crest. Attribution of sex cannot be definitive where the pelvis of an individual is missing, and where there are no other skeletal remains from the same population for comparison. The evidence from this skull suggests, however, that the individual was male.

Age estimation is also difficult when only one individual is available for study. The teeth are generally thought to provide the best guide, but the normal method is to assess the wear of the molars. This is a less reliable method with post-medieval groups as they are assumed to have eaten softer foods and consequently had a slower

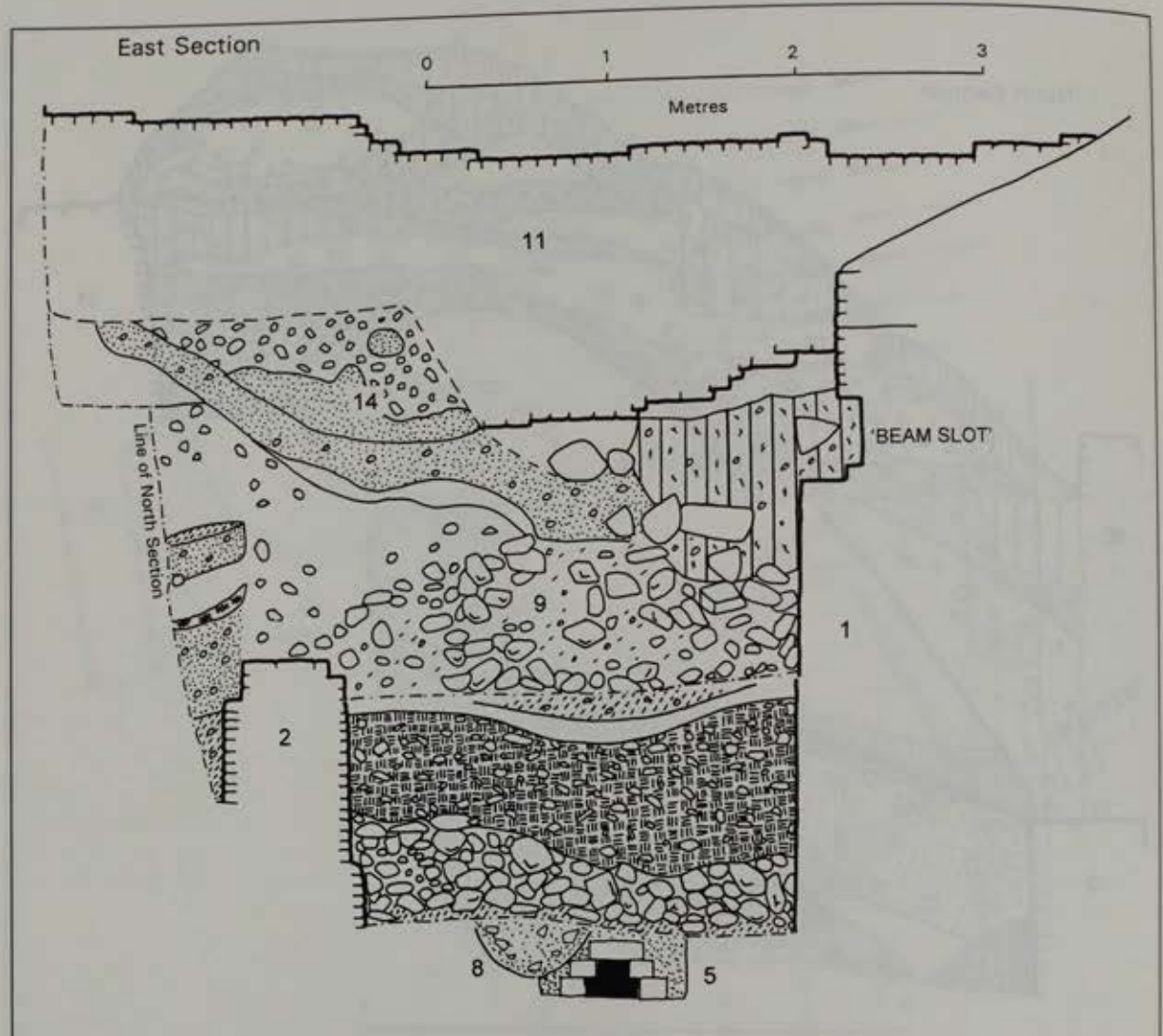


Fig 73 Citadel Postern Gate Excavation 1991 – East section.

rate of tooth wear. The state of attrition of the teeth of this individual suggests that he was aged between 18 and 25 at death. However, his third molars are present, and the basi-occipital suture is fully fused, both of which suggest he was at least 21 years old.

The length, breadth and height of the skull could not be measured, but the general appearance suggests a round-headed (brachycephalic) individual. There is a trend towards brachycephaly in European populations after the Saxon period. The facial measurements suggest that he had a broad face but a narrow nose. The absence of post-cranial evidence means that the height of the individual could not be estimated.

A number of non-metric or genetic anomalies were seen in the skull and atlas (first cervical vertebra). There was a left parietal foramen, at least one lambdoid wormian bone, bilateral post-condylar canals and a precondylar tubercle, and more unusually, a parietal notch bone was present on the right. The atlas superior facet was double on the right, and there was an atlas bridge also on the right. These traits would be useful in a large group for suggesting family relationships.

Only the maxillary teeth could be studied, all of which were present except both first and the left second incisors which had been lost post-mortem. Carious lesions had affected four teeth out of the 13 remaining. All appeared to have started at the tooth neck, where they were quite small on the right second incisor (mesial surface)

and the left second molar (buccal surface). The lesions on the right second and third molars were much larger, covering 25% of the crown of the former and 40% of the crown of the latter. The pulp cavity of the third molar was open, and an abscess was starting to develop around the root of this tooth. Slight calculus was seen on all the teeth, although it was heavier in the right molar region. This might be the result of favouring the left teeth, when the pain on the right side became too great. The high prevalence of dental caries in this individual, particularly as he is thought to have been quite young, is suggestive of the increased carbohydrate consumption seen in post-medieval populations.

Two conditions associated with iron deficiency anemia were seen on the skull. There appeared to be cribra orbitalia (porotic type, Brothwell 1981) of the right orbit, although the area was broken and it was difficult to be certain. Signs of healed porotic hyperostosis (slight thickening, pitting and striation of the parietals bilaterally along the sagittal suture) were also present. In addition, a small wart-like growth (4 x 7mm), probably a benign osteoma, was present on the left side of the frontal bone below the temporal line. It is unlikely to have affected the individual in any way.

The most dramatic pathological lesion was a 40mm long cut running diagonally from c8mm to the left of the bregma on the coronal suture across to the right parietal. A slight crack was also present on the endocranial surface, although the cut did not penetrate the



Fig 74 Postern Gate Excavations viewed from the west showing the human skull as found in the shallow gully next to the brick-built drain.



Fig 75 View from the interior showing the successive narrowing of the west end of the Postern Gate passage.

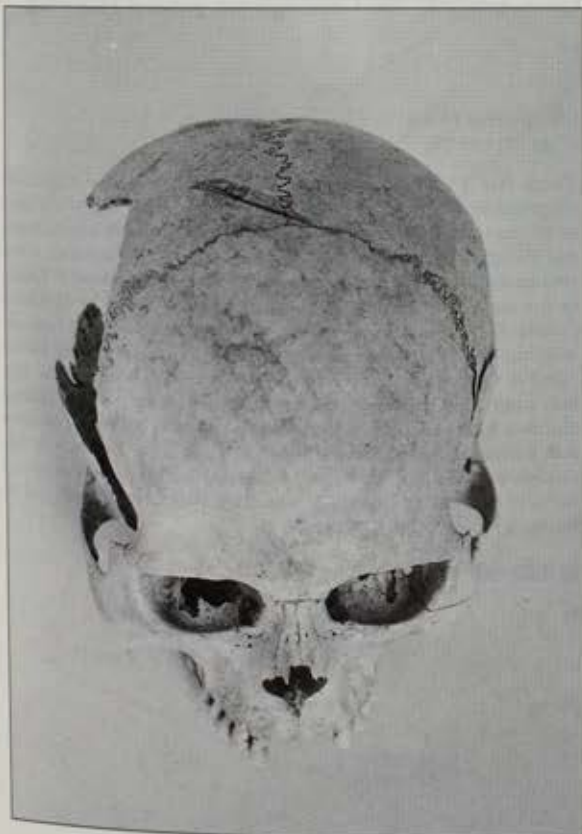


Fig 76 Skull from the Citadel Postern Gate. The sword wound is clearly visible.

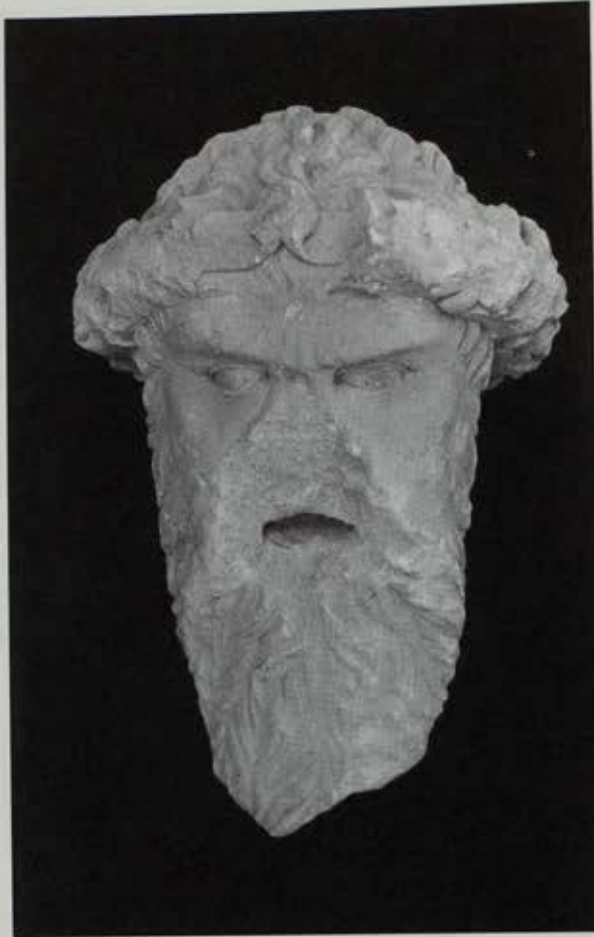


Fig 77 Carved stone head from the Citadel Postern Gate; probably the emperor Marcus Aurelius

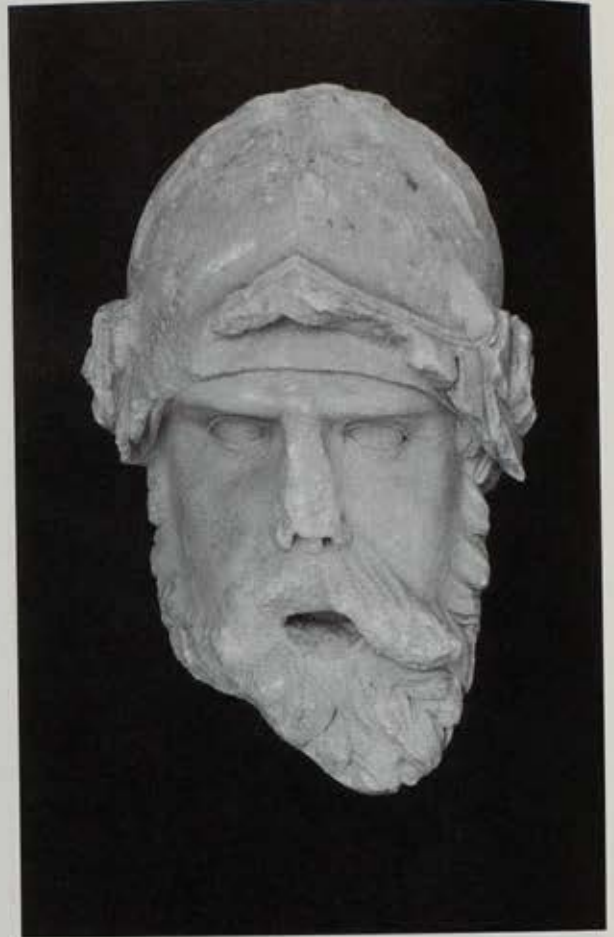


Fig 78 Carved stone head from the Citadel Postern Gate; possibly the Carthaginian general Hannibal.

skull. The wound was unhealed, but it is unlikely to have been the cause of death. Such a cut might kill an individual after a few days if it induced a brain haemorrhage, but lack of evidence for healing or any inflammation shows that this did not happen here. Indeed, a likely scenario, given the circumstances of the find, would be that the man was knocked out by a blow to the top of his head, and whilst disabled he was decapitated. As the mandible, hyoid bone, and other cervical vertebrae, all of which might be expected to show cuts in a case of decapitation, are missing, it is not possible to show exactly how the head was severed.

Summary

The skull of a youth or man in early middle-age was examined and found to have a number of genetic anomalies. It also displayed a high prevalence of dental disease, and pathological lesions consistent with iron deficiency anemia. The most dramatic lesion was an unhealed sword cut to the crown and this, together with the evidence for decapitation, suggests that the individual concerned met a violent death.

The Sculpted Heads (Figs 77 and 78)

These fine pieces of 16th century craftsmanship are stylistically comparable to the head of Hadrian found on the site at the turn of the century. One probably portrays the emperor Marcus Aurelius, and the other may depict the Carthaginian general Hannibal. A few references do survive to the quality of work being executed at Basing in the mid-16th century, and one of these is noted by Hubbuck (1998). He draws attention to an extract from an account book for building work done at Basing in October 1569. Among the names listed is that of Humfrey Lovell, the Queens Master mason, who may have been involved with the design of earlier work at Basing, and was known to have recommended Robert Smithson, another well known designer, for works at Longleat. This link may be significant in that the French mason-carver Allen Maynard was known to have worked at Longleat, and may well have contributed to Basing's stonework up to c1565.

Archive: A1991.31

Chapter 9

The Walled Garden

The Excavations and Finds

The Excavations

The area now known as the Walled Garden is essentially a large rectangular terrace $c150\text{m} \times 50\text{m}$, bounded to the north-west by the course of the Basingstoke Canal (Fig 21, Area 5). The curtain walls to the north-west and south-west appear to be original, or on the original line, as do two towers which housed dovecotes, at the western angle and to the north (see Chapter 2). In the 1980s the surface of the Walled Garden was gently undulating, and had been subject

to a number of known disturbances, ranging from use as vegetable allotments from the 1940s, to the installation of a swimming pool in the 1960s.

Excavations were carried out in 1982–83 and 1987–88 (Fig 79). The two principal objectives were to examine the area for evidence of the original layout or structures, eg walls, paths, fountain bases and bedding trenches, and to examine features down to subsoil level (or an agreed depth) so that a period garden could be created without the destruction of unrecorded archaeological evidence.

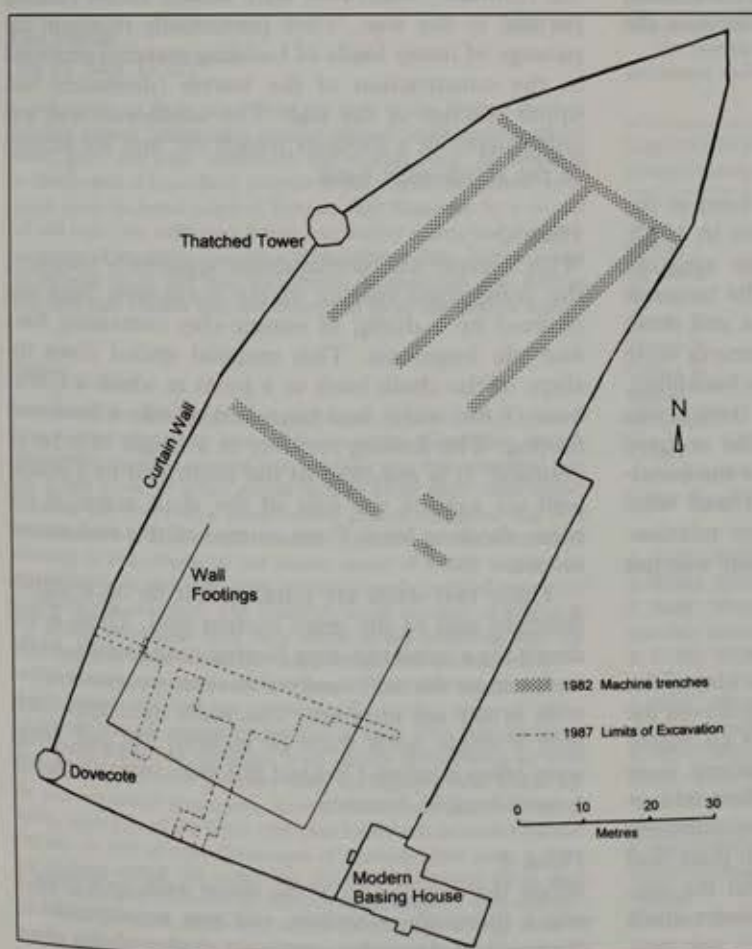


Fig 79 Walled Garden Excavations 1982 & 1987–88 showing the approximate position of trenches, areas excavated and the location of the walls.



Fig 80 Walled Garden View of the 1988 excavation of the wall foundations. The corner dovecote is in the background.

1982-83

Six trial trenches were excavated by machine at the northern end of the site by the YTS team in 1982. In all the trenches the chalk subsoil was approximately 0.5m below the surface. Four of the trenches contained lengths of brick wall foundation and there was some evidence for a ditch. These features were left *in situ* and the trenches have now been backfilled.

In December 1983 a narrow machine trench was cut across the garden from the gate in the orchard wall to the vicinity of the north dovecote for the installation of power lines. More fragments of wall were uncovered, forming a right angle, but their relationship with the walls seen in the previous year was not fully established.

1987-88

In 1987 attention focused on the southern end of the garden, an area $c40\text{m} \times 40\text{m}$. A full section across the terrace was excavated by hand, as well as an extension to the south-west. Brick wall foundations were revealed on three sides of the terrace. In the trial section a number of gullies and pits were encountered but they did not suggest a coherent garden plan, and some were of considerable depth. Between the curtain wall and the nearest terrace wall a massive chalk bank was revealed.

In the summer of 1988 the wall foundations were fully exposed along three sides of a 30m square (Fig 80). They survived on the north-west and south-east sides as 4 or 5 brick courses. On the south-west side the wall had been almost totally removed, but a robber-trench backfilled with broken brick and mortar could be discerned. The area within the walls was stripped and levelled by machine but no more features were seen in what, depth-wise, was a comparatively limited exercise.

Further landscaping work in 1989 during the construction of garden paths adjacent to the exhibition building (modern Basing House) in the south-east corner of the garden, unearthed the foundations of a wall and a worn brick surface, together with a thin layer of destruction debris.

Interpretation

The work in 1987-88 allows a sequence of three phases of activity to be proposed:

Phase 1

The curtain wall was constructed, and the terrace created by the removal of chalk from the uphill (south-east) side. Much of this material was employed to make substantial banks against the curtain wall, and to the south-west. The bank against the curtain wall was compacted by the passage of numerous carts, and the resultant wheel ruts were clearly visible running parallel to the wall. They presumably represent the passage of many loads of building material employed in the construction of the towers (dovecotes) and upper reaches of the wall. The south-west wall was constructed in a footings trench cut into the summit of the south-west bank.

Phase 2

With curtain wall construction apparently complete, the compacted surface of the north-west bank was covered by a dump of orange clay containing flints and tile fragments. This material spilled down the slope of the chalk bank to a point at which a mortar base (0.8m wide) had been laid to take a brick wall footing. The footing survives to a height of 0.5m (6 courses). It is matched to the south-east by a similar wall set against the foot of the chalk scarp, at the same absolute level. Four courses of this wall remain *in situ*.

These two walls are parallel, but lie on a slightly different axis to the main curtain wall. There is evidence for a contemporary footing to the south. At the west corner the wall survived as seven courses, capped with bricks set on edge. The walls were apparently only a single brick thick (9 inches), but half bricks were often mortared behind this skin, sometimes over a considerable distance.

Phase 3

When the demolition of the inner walls took place it was a thorough operation, and was accompanied by dumping of clay soils containing chalk and tile, which

BASING HOUSE WALLED GARDEN
Possible sequence and dating of activities

1530s	i)	Scarping, quarrying, dumping (medieval sherds, tile and brick).
	ii)	Construction of curtain walls, towers, chalk banks (tile and brick).
	iii)	Construction of 'inner walls', ?horizontal levels attained, 'sunken garden' created.
1642-45	iv)	Civil War siege. Walls and towers breached for musket loops, etc.
1650s	v)	Inner brick walls demolished and removed to foundation level.
1700s	vi)	Garden soil imported, path(s) made.
	vii)	Central path shown on plan of 1750-60 (revisions 1790s) but not archaeologically detectable. The first path evident from excavation is of early 19th century date.
1800-1940s	viii)	Vegetable garden well worked, subsidiary paths and plots created. Known from aerial photographs (Fig 8) and surface indications. (Pottery, glass, metal, animal bone, etc.)

Table 3: Walled Garden - Possible sequence and dating of activities.

resulted in a saucer-like profile for the inner area. Subsequently, garden paths composed of chalk, roughly metallated with flint, brick, tile and potsherds were laid, dividing the area into small rectangular plots.

In the absence of closely dated artefacts, a possible chronology for the Walled Garden is presented in Table 3.

The Finds

(Fig 81 Nos 1-22)

A great variety of finds came from the area of the kitchen garden, including pottery (particularly transfer printed and domestic glazed wares), glass, clay pipe, metalwork and animal bone. All relate to the distribution of household rubbish in the 'vegetable garden' area. Casual losses included coins of Victoria and Elizabeth II, a cricket ball and toys. One deliberate burial was that of a dog, but the shallow nature of the grave suggests a 20th century date. Earlier material included brick and tile, and sherds of medieval and Roman date. One lead musket ball was recovered from the garden soil.

Pottery

A few small sherds (346g) were uncovered in the 1982-3 excavations. A number of these were of Saxon or Medieval date, mostly representing unglazed cooking pots in sandy and flint tempered fabrics. A few pieces of green glazed Surrey white ware were found, including one sherd of a green-brown glazed decorated jug in a coarse sandy white fabric (illustrated). The rest of the assemblage consisted of Post-Medieval red wares, many of which may represent garden pots, and 19th-20th century transfer printed wares. No stoneware was collected. The relatively small amount of later pottery in this assemblage may be a result of the retention and disposal policy in operation at the time, which was not recorded.

The amount of pottery collected from the 1987-8 excavation was slightly greater (3323g), but consisted of a similar range of wares. There was a much greater proportion of 19th-20th century transfer printed wares and porcelain (one glazed earthenware jar bore the label 'Vienna 1873'), mostly from the upper levels. These layers also contained stoneware, Surrey white ware and red wares. Again, some pots of the latter type may have been intended for garden use. As well as some fragments of modern plant pots, a number of thick-walled red pots with internal red/brown glaze were found, some with rouletted or stamped decoration on the outer surface (from the path make-up). A rim sherd from a large bowl of similar size and form to some of the red ware examples may be

derived from Verwood, Dorset. One interesting find from Layer 02 was a small stoneware ointment pot with khaki glaze, and the inscription 'S. Green 2 Union Place Lambeths' in blue transfer print. Much of the pottery from the lower layers was of Early to Late Medieval date.

A small number of finds was made during the landscaping of the walled garden in 1990; one is illustrated (No 12).

Overall, the greatest proportion of pottery by weight consisted of red wares, the majority of which were large bowls or dishes. However, stonewares and cream wares were also very common, and probably outnumber the red wares if the number of vessels which they represent is taken into account.

For descriptions of the fabrics refer to the pottery report for the gatehouse and ringwork terminals (see p61).

BASING HOUSE WALLED GARDEN
Pottery Group Totals (Weights in grams)

	North	South	Total
Group 1	0	0	0
Group 2	80	58	138
Group 3	78	58	136
Group 4	16	147	163
Group 5	155	1510	1665
Group 6	0	731	731
Group 7	17	779	796
Verwood	0	40	40
Total	346	3323	3669

Table 4: Walled Garden - Pottery groups.

1. BH82 WG01 Jar rim in Fabric 3.3. Medieval?
2. BH82 WG02 Rim in Fabric 2.7. Medieval?
3. BH82 WG01 Large red ware bowl with internal red (clear) glaze, possibly intended for garden use. Post-Medieval.
4. BH82 WG02 Sherd in Fabric 4.3a, decorated with incised lines and glazed brown/green. Late Medieval?
5. BH87 WG02 Small pot in Fabric 4.3a with patches of green glaze externally, rather coarse and possibly smoke blackened.
6. BH87 WG02 Surrey white ware jar rim with internal yellow glaze, Fabric 4.1b. The glaze was burnt in one small area. 17th century?
7. BH87 WG02 Black glazed stoneware lid, moulded? 19th/20th century?
8. BH87 WG04 Rim sherd in Fabric 3.1, unglazed. A similar rim sherd, although slightly more everted, was found in the 1982 excavations.
9. BH87 WG02 Stoneware ointment pot in light buff fabric with khaki glaze and inscription in blue glaze. 19th century?



Fig 81 Basing House Walled Garden. Pottery, Ceramic Building Material, Stone, Glass and Clay pipes. Nos 1-6 and 9-14, Scale 1:4; Nos 7-8 and 15-22, Scale 1:2.

10-11. BH87 WG Path make-up Fragments of two red ware pots with internal red/brown glaze and stamped/rollered patterns externally. Probably garden ornaments.

12. BH90 WG White ware rim sherd with impressed decoration. 17th century?

Stone and Ceramic Building Material

Although large quantities of brick and tile were uncovered during the walled garden excavations, very little was kept. The 1982 collection consists of two red rubbed/moulded bricks, probably of Tudor date. Most of the ceramic building material recovered in 1987 was flat red and grey roof tile, plus a few brick fragments. Two tile fragments had deposits of melted glass adhering to their surface, and can probably be dated to the pre-Civil war period.

One fragment of very sandy, light buff coloured plain plaster or rendering was found in the top layer.

Four small fragments of slate were found in the two upper layers. The use of slate at Basing House has already been noted in connection with finds from the gatehouse and ditch excavations.

One small block of stone with deposits of mortar was found, and another fragment of shaped stone had apparently been used as a whetstone. A small piece of calcite was also found.

13. BH82 WG Middle E-W Trench Moulded red brick. Tudor?
14. BH87 WG01 Small shaped stone, possibly a whetstone. Buff coloured medium-grained sandstone.

Glass

Most of the glass from Walled Garden contexts was window or bottle glass. The window glass dated from the Tudor period (green quarries and two blue fragments) to modern times (?greenhouse clear glass). Most of the bottle fragments were of 19th century or later date

(and included a rubber cork labelled 'Courage & Co. Ltd. Alton, Hants'), but a few pieces of 17th century bottles also turned up. Only a few vessel glass fragments were found, and these were all unidentifiable.

15. BH87 WG Path make-up Small green bottle neck.

Clay Pipes

The majority of clay pipe fragments were from the upper two layers. Only a few bowls were found. The plain ones were of 17th century date, whilst the fragmentary decorated examples were all 19th century.

16. BH87 WG01 Fragment of bowl. London type, 1600-1650.
17-18. BH87 WG02 Two bowl fragments. London and South Eastern types, 1650-1700.
19-22. BH87 WG02 Fragments of decorated bowls. 19th century.

Metalwork

All the metalwork came from the upper two layers of the site. The majority of finds were iron nails, horseshoes, and staples, as well as one saw fragment, an iron ring and a piece of slag.

Copper alloy finds were mainly of modern date and included cartridge fragments, a bridle ring, a bolt, an egg boiler label and three buttons. Lead finds included a musket ball.

Coins

The earliest coin to be recovered was an 1879 penny. Two other pre-decimal pennies dated to 1966 (Irish) and 1967.

Miscellaneous

Miscellaneous finds included two slate pencils, three plastic 'Lego' bricks and a cricket ball.

Environmental

Two oyster shells were recovered from Layer 02 in 1987. A few fragments of butchered animal bone were also collected from this layer and the orange clay bank, but they were not subjected to analysis due to the disturbed nature of the Walled Garden deposits.

Archives: A1982.8; A1987.21

The first part of the book is devoted to a general history of the United States from its discovery to the present time.

The second part of the book is devoted to a general history of the United States from its discovery to the present time.



Fig. 1. A collection of sketches showing various objects, possibly related to the text above.

The third part of the book is devoted to a general history of the United States from its discovery to the present time.

The fourth part of the book is devoted to a general history of the United States from its discovery to the present time.

The fifth part of the book is devoted to a general history of the United States from its discovery to the present time.

The sixth part of the book is devoted to a general history of the United States from its discovery to the present time.



Fig. 2. A collection of sketches showing various objects, possibly related to the text above.

The seventh part of the book is devoted to a general history of the United States from its discovery to the present time.

The eighth part of the book is devoted to a general history of the United States from its discovery to the present time.

Chapter 10

The New House

The Excavations and Finds

The New House (Fig 21, Area 6) has seen comparatively little controlled excavation in recent years, and has considerable potential for future work. This section therefore reports in interim fashion only on the discoveries of 1990, which can be considered as the first chapter in a new phase of work at the site, rather than the last elements of an existing project.

The area of the New House has suffered modification and disturbance on a number of occasions. The first was probably in the early 17th century, when the family had over-reached themselves financially in entertaining Elizabeth I; deliberate dismantling of parts of the House appear to have followed. The next episode was the destruction caused by the Civil War siege, and the fall of Basing, when the major attack was launched from this quarter. Following this, the deliberate robbing of building materials was probably most acute at this nearest point to the village, and then the construction of the Basingstoke Canal drove a sinuous trench right through the heart of the ruined complex. In more recent times the area has been disturbed by the extensive but shallow excavations of 1875 to 1908, and the deep and untidy work of the late 1960s.

The full extent of the disturbance to this part of the New House has only become plain with the restoration of Park Hill Cottage, and the acquisition by Hampshire County Council of a further strip of land adjacent to the in-filled canal. It now seems certain that the cottage was built directly onto the northernmost corner of the New House, which makes the north-west range c75m in length, and a central range appears to be represented by a substantial wall running just to the south-west of the line of the canal.

The Excavations

The 1990 excavation was a three week season in July and August on the surviving parts of the north-west range. An area of 25 × 15m was opened, with a 2.5m wide medial baulk being left for access and reference purposes (Fig 82). The partly back-filled trenches of 1967 and 1969 were identified and emptied. One of

these had laid bare the remains of the north-west wall, the other had revealed the mouth of a drain in the south-west wall. The emptying of the backfilled turn of the century trenches allowed much of the outline plan to be appreciated. Work then centred on the removal of the substantial layered deposit of brick rubble, broken tile and ashy soil from the interior of the building. The adjacent bank to the west, and the area to the north were also examined.

The excavations showed that the north-west range of the New House had been terraced into the natural slope thereby creating a substantial undercroft (Fig 83). The inner wall – with its stair towers – was deeply founded into the natural chalk, but the outer wall merely stood on the subsoil surface. This may account for its almost total disappearance. In one area, however, it stood on the line of a ditch of medieval date, and in this softer material a tile course survived *in situ*.

There was no evidence for an entrance from the north side, but more than half of the range was destroyed during canal construction, and the doorway presumably lay in this area. The building had a solid chalk floor throughout. Wear patterns against both inner and outer walls suggested that this had always been so, and that no made or laid floor had been removed. In this surface a number of features could be seen which gave some clue as to the function.

The largest of these was a central drain, which ran the length of the building before disappearing into a brick arched tunnel. To the south east of the drain was a series of substantial post holes. On the evidence of four surviving examples, these could be paired with wall sockets 1m above floor level. This arrangement suggested some form of stalling or manger, and the probability is that the building functioned as a stables. The surviving area could have accommodated some 16 or 17 horses. The location of a stable, close to Garrison Gate, is appropriate.

One or two details of construction are worthy of note. The westernmost corner, shown as having a south-westerly projection by Peers (1909, Plate 87) has no such feature. In addition, the lesser wall, which does run away to the north-west, could be traced as

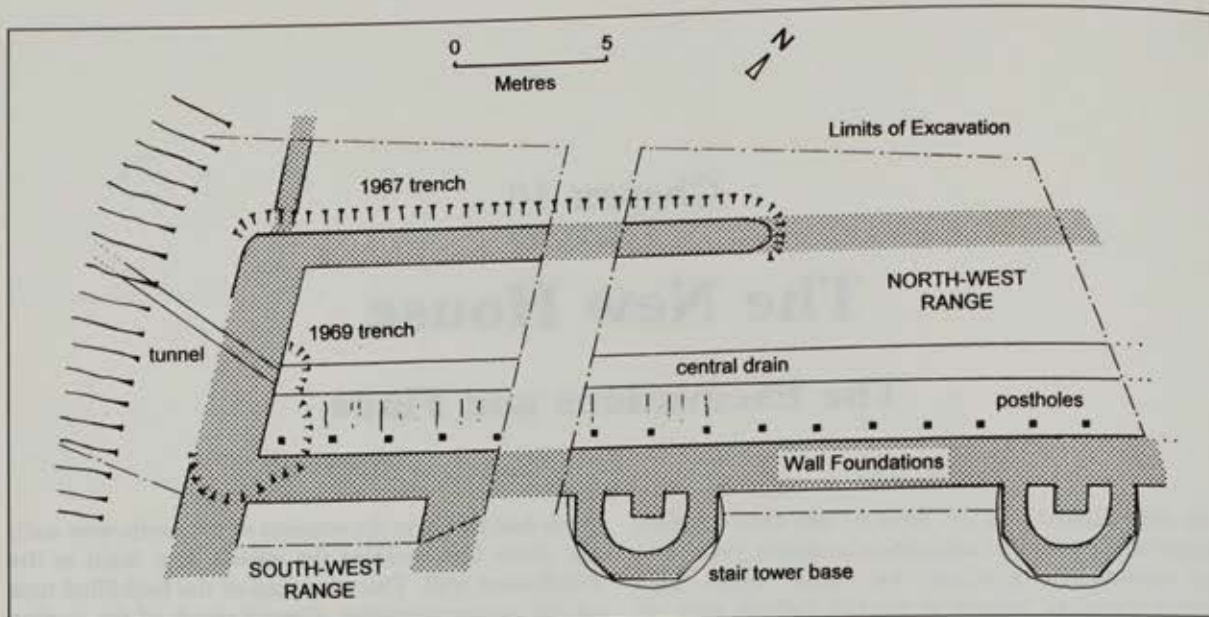


Fig 82 New House Excavations 1990; plan of the north-west range.



Fig 83 General view of the New House excavations from the north-east, showing how the stable block was terraced into the slope.

a parch-mark. It appears to delineate the bailey ditch. Finally, lines of mortar surviving on the semi-circular bases of the stair towers indicate that above ground these structures were octagonal in plan.

The overall impression to be gained from the excavation, however, is one of an extremely thorough

post-Civil War demolition exercise, which went so far as to strip out the brick lining and flooring of the central drain. This results in limited evidence for the construction and demolition phases, and practically none at all for the presumed period of occupation - 1560 to 1645.

The Finds

The majority of finds came from the extensive rubble layers and not surprisingly consisted of fragments of pottery, glazed tile, window and vessel glass, clay pipe, and animal bone. Metalwork finds, however, did include a large number of buckles, some horse harness, horse shoes and nails, as well as window lead, musket shot, a pewter spoon, and coins of Elizabeth I and Charles I. None of these was in a primary context. Exceptions to this rule were the

numerous sherds of later medieval pottery from the ditch section. Two animal burials (pig, and pig and dog) were of comparatively recent (20th century) date.

The New House at Basing warrants further investigation, excavation and publication. Full consideration of the finds from the 1990 season will therefore be deferred until it can be incorporated into this work.

Archive: A1990.24

Conclusions

The excavations at Basing have revealed a complex sequence of occupation and activity. The earliest phase, dating to the late medieval period, is represented by the remains of the New House, a large timber-framed building. This structure was replaced by a more substantial stone building in the early modern period, which was in turn replaced by a further structure in the late 17th or early 18th century. The site also contains extensive rubble layers, which are the remains of various structures and features that have since been destroyed. These layers contain a wide range of finds, including pottery, glass, metalwork, and animal bone, which provide valuable information about the daily life and activities of the people who lived and worked at Basing. The excavations have also revealed the presence of a ditch, which may have served as a defensive feature or a boundary. The site is of great importance for understanding the history and development of Basing and the surrounding area.

The excavations at Basing have also revealed a complex sequence of occupation and activity. The earliest phase, dating to the late medieval period, is represented by the remains of the New House, a large timber-framed building. This structure was replaced by a more substantial stone building in the early modern period, which was in turn replaced by a further structure in the late 17th or early 18th century. The site also contains extensive rubble layers, which are the remains of various structures and features that have since been destroyed. These layers contain a wide range of finds, including pottery, glass, metalwork, and animal bone, which provide valuable information about the daily life and activities of the people who lived and worked at Basing. The excavations have also revealed the presence of a ditch, which may have served as a defensive feature or a boundary. The site is of great importance for understanding the history and development of Basing and the surrounding area.

The first part of the chapter discusses the early years of the republic, from 1787 to 1800. It covers the signing of the Constitution and the election of George Washington as the first president.

The second part of the chapter discusses the years 1800 to 1820, focusing on the presidencies of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. It highlights the Louisiana Purchase and the War of 1812.



Fig. 1. The Battle of the Clouds, 1819, showing the position of the army of the United States.



Fig. 2. The Mississippi River, showing the course of the river and the location of the city of New Orleans.

The third part of the chapter discusses the years 1820 to 1840, focusing on the presidencies of James Monroe and John Quincy Adams. It covers the Monroe Doctrine and the Nullification Crisis.

The fourth part of the chapter discusses the years 1840 to 1860, focusing on the presidencies of James K. Polk and Zachary Taylor. It covers the Mexican-American War and the beginning of the Civil War.

Chapter 11

Conclusions

Despite the various difficulties encountered during the excavation and post-excavation processes the archaeological investigations reported here represent a considerable step forward in our understanding and appreciation of the history of Basing House. This is particularly true of the Citadel, or Old House, but the work in other areas has also reaped considerable rewards.

The Citadel

The excavation of the Citadel Gatehouse has allowed the identification of six main periods of activity, ranging from defensive ringwork to romanticised ruin. Whilst this basic sequence is not in doubt, a key factor throughout has been the paucity of finds which makes absolute dating difficult, particularly for the earlier periods.

One of the most taxing questions concerns the initial date of construction of the Basing House ringwork defences. Our preferred view is that Basing House superseded the as yet unexplored and undated earthwork at Oliver's Battery, as the principal defensive site in the locality. Oliver's Battery is located near the Roman road crossing of the River Loddon, whereas Basing House provided a better defended site on higher ground. It is probably not insignificant that this later location was also adjacent to the site of a Roman villa.

This sequence would allow Oliver's Battery to represent a Conquest period motte and bailey castle constructed by Hugh de Port, and Basing to be an improved and updated residence built by his son Henry, or grandson John. A date in the first half of the 12th century would therefore apply, and the existence of the two castles would make sense of the admittedly enigmatic reference of mid-12th century date, to the 'old castle' at Basing (p 4). Further corroborative evidence can be found in the accepted dates for the construction of the ringworks at Merdon (1136), Old Sarum (1103-30) and Ashley (in existence by 1141).

Once established the medieval defensive circuit would have benefited from rebuilding and remodeling, and suffered from the vicissitudes of neglect and decay. Recognisable episodes include the construction of the outer gatetower and inner gatehouse on the western side of the approach to the main gate,

and the heightening of the ringwork. The absolute dating of these events is not possible, but they span the late 12th to late 15th centuries. The Postern Gate appears to have been in existence throughout this period.

In the 16th century a new lease of life was given to the site by the ambitious plans of William Paulet. The transformation appears to have involved two phases of Citadel Gate construction, with the first Tudor period passageway possibly acting as a temporary entrance while the grand design was being hatched. By the second half of the century the approach to the Old House would have involved crossing the brick-built bridge, passing through the impressive gatehouse with its octagonal corner towers, and emerging into the fan-shaped courtyard. With the advent of the Civil War and in particular the siege, a number of defensive works were put in place. In the area of the main gate chalk block walls and dumps of clay with flints were added to the outer face of the rampart, and it is presumably this sort of preparation which was credited with being able to withstand cannon shot in 'The Soldier's Report' (p 6). An even more desperate measure is suggested by the 'H'-shaped feature in the gate passage. This must represent the barricading of the gate itself, but whether this was a permanent feature of the siege, or a response to the final assault, cannot be ascertained.

By contrast the Postern Gate, although reduced in width, appears to have provided a means of access to the Citadel throughout the siege. If this was the case it is easy to imagine it being a key defensive point in the final attack, and the discovery of the human skull in this location is a grisly reminder of what took place here. Other evidence of the razing of Basing is to be found in the burnt layer present in the Citadel gateway.

The amount of time taken over the demolition of Basing House remains a matter for conjecture. The small but significant engraving by Dunstall (Fig 5) clearly shows the damage inflicted by the attack of October 1645. The date of the artist's visit is not known, although the print was published in 1653. What is depicted by Dunstall is the burnt-out shell of the house, before large-scale robbing and quarrying took place.

The next identifiable episode is the fashioning of a landscaped approach to an enclosed garden or vine-

yard. Close dating is again difficult, but the observations of Celia Fiennes in the 1690s are probably the most relevant here (p 9). By this time the gatehouse, and indeed the buildings within the Citadel, had been levelled, and soil imported to make the garden grow. Some difficulty remains in deciding whether or not all the insubstantial walls and buttresses around the inner face of the rampart were created at this time, but the majority clearly were. The excavations which took place between 1875 and 1908 resulted in the removal of all the garden soil from the Citadel, as well as considerable quantities of brick and stone rubble, as cellars and other subterranean features were cleared. One surprising revelation was that much of this spoil appears to have been dumped into the main ditch terminals, even though a corresponding part of the exercise was the excavation of the adjacent bridge.

The Walled Garden

It is clear that there was a major planned feature in the area of the Walled Garden by the mid 16th century, installed as part of William Paulet's refurbishment and landscaping of Basing House. A horizontal terrace was created, enclosed by low brick walls, but there is no evidence for what went on there. It was probably not a formal garden, however, because of the absence of identifiable features such as beds and paths. Possible uses for the terrace might involve a

tilt-yard, for gentle jousting, or as a bowling green. The interval towers in the Curtain Wall would have served as ideal vantage points. Their transformation into dovecotes came later, at an unknown date, but certainly post-Civil War, and therefore presumably after the restoration of the site to the Paulet family.

The New House

The work on the north-west range of the New House demonstrated just how thorough the robbing of the fabric had been in some areas. Despite this, the essential plan and function of the building, a substantial stable housed in the undercroft, could be ascertained, and this bodes well for the future investigation of other poorly preserved parts of the site.

Finally, it is to be hoped that the ten seasons of archaeological excavation reported on here will serve a dual role for Basing House. On the one hand they may be seen to draw a line under the extensive, intrusive and sometimes erratic investigations of the 19th and 20th centuries, whilst on the other they demonstrate beyond any shadow of a doubt the quality of the surviving evidence and the enormous potential of the site. The opportunity to redefine a forward plan and project design for Basing House to fully realise this remarkable potential, is one that should not be missed.

Bibliography and References

Bibliography

Manuscript Sources

- Anderson, S Unpublished 'Human Skeletal Remains from Basing House 1972 Accessions', Report for Hampshire County Museums Service, Dec 1991.
- Anderson, S Unpublished 'A Human Skeleton from Grange Farm, Old Basing', Archive Report for Hampshire County Museums Service, Feb 1992.
- HBMC Warden Report 1984 on Oliver's Battery, Old Basing. Copy with Sites and Monuments Record, County Planning Department, Winchester.

Printed Sources

- CCAM *Calendar of the Committee for Advance of Money*, Public Record Office, London, 73, 880, 963.
- CCC *Calendar of the Committee for Compounding*, Public Record Office, London.
- Commons Journals *Journals of the House of Commons*, IV 1644-6.
- CPR 1891 *Calendar of Patent Rolls*, Public Record Office, London.
- CSPD *Calendar of State Papers Domestic*, Public Record Office, London.
- DoE List of Buildings of Special Architectural or Historical Interest - Hampshire County Council.
- LPFD *Letters and Papers Foreign and Domestic*, Public Record Office, London.
- Historical Manuscripts Commission 1891, Duke of Portland, I, 154-6, letter by Waller, 16 Nov 1643.

Published, and Other Works

- Anon 1815 *Guide to Basing*
- Anon - possibly Lord Bolton 1824 *History of Basing House*.
- Anon 1865 *A Handbook for Travellers in Surrey, Hampshire and the Isle of Wight*, London.
- Anon c1963 *The Great Siege of Basing House 1642-1645* - Guide book for Basing House.
- Anon 1967 'Interim Report on Excavations at Basing House 1967' pamphlet, source unknown (possibly written by G K Miller or P C Orde-Powlett).
- Adair, J 1981 *They Saw It Happen. Contemporary Accounts of the Siege of Basing House*, Hampshire County Council.
- Alcock, L 1966 'Castle Tower, Penmaen: A Norman Ringwork in Glamorgan', *Antiq J* 46:178-210.
- Allen, D 1992 'A Civil War Severed Head', *Hants Field Club Newsletter* n s 17:14-15.
- Allen, D and Anderson, S 1990 'The Human Skeletal Remains from Apple Tree Cottage, Old Basing', *Hants Field Club Newsletter* n s 13:28.
- Applebaum, S 1953 'The distribution of the Romano-British Population in the Basingstoke area', *Proc Hants Field Club* 18, Part 2:122, 134-8.
- Barnard, F P 1916 *The Casting-Counter and the Counting Board*, Oxford.
- Batey, M 1987 'Basing House Tudor Garden', *Garden History* 15:94-109.
- Beeler, J H 1966 *Warfare in England 1066-1189*, Cornell Univ Press.
- Biddle, M 1990 *Object and Economy in Medieval Winchester*, Oxford University Press.
- Brothwell, D 1981 *Digging up Bones*, BMNH/OUP.
- Camden 1600 & 1607 *Britannia*.
- Carlyle, T 1849 *Oliver Cromwell's Letters and Speeches* 3rd ed Vol I, 209-214 - Cromwell's letter to the Speaker, 14th October 1645 and Hugh Peters at Basing House.
- Chandler, S 1827 *The History of Basing House*.
- Coates, R 1989 *The Place-Names of Hampshire*, London.
- Colleton Rennie, C G 1876 An account of Basing House in *Proc Soc Antiq* 2nd ser vi, 461-2.

- Combley, R C, J W Notman & H H Pike 1968 'Further Excavations at Basing House, 1964-1966', *Proc Hants Field Club* 23 pt 3, 96-109.
- Cowgill, J, de Neergaard, J and Griffiths, N 1987 *Medieval Finds from Excavations in London 1: Knives and Scabbards*, Museum of London/HMSO.
- Crawford, O G S 1953 *Archaeology in the Field*.
- Cunliffe, B 1964 *Winchester Excavations 1949-1960 Volume 1*, Winchester Museums and Libraries Committee.
- Defoe, D 1928 *A Tour through England and Wales, Volume 1*, London.
- Dugdale, T 1830 *Monasticon Anglicanum*.
- Eames, E S 1980 *Catalogue of lead-glazed earthenware tiles in the Department of Medieval and Later Antiquities of the British Museum*, BMP.
- Ekwall, E 1960 *The Concise Oxford Dictionary of English Placenames*, 4th ed, Oxford.
- Emberton, W 1963 'In search of the golden calf', *Hampshire*, 3, No 11, Sept 1963.
- Emberton, W 1972 *Love Loyalty*, Basing.
- Field, J 1989 *English Field Names, A Dictionary*, Gloucester.
- Finberg, H P R 1964 *The Early Charters of Wessex*, Leicester Univ Press.
- Freeman, J 1952 *Thomas Fuller's The Worthies of England*, London.
- Godwin, G N 1882 *The Civil War in Hampshire*, London (Revised edition 1904).
- Godwin, G N 1906 in *Jeans, Memories of Old Hampshire*, London.
- Greenfield, B W 1893 'Encaustic tiles of the Middle Ages, especially those found in the South of Hampshire', *Proc Hants Field Club* 2:141-166.
- Grinsell, L V 1940 'Hampshire Barrows', *Proc Hants Field Club* 14: 348.
- Haslam, J 1975 'The Excavation of a 17th-century Pottery Site at Cove, E Hampshire', *Post-Medieval Arch* 9: 164-87.
- Hinton, D 1986 'The Place of Basing in mid Saxon History', *Proc Hants Field Club* 42:162-4.
- Hobson, R L 1910 'Some medieval pottery from Basing House, Hants', *Proc Soc Ant London* 2nd ser, 23, 140-151.
- Holmes, M R 1951 'The so-called "Bellarmine" mask on imported Rhenish stoneware', *Antiq J* 31:173-179.
- Howard, M 1987 *The Early Tudor Country House*, London.
- Hubbuck, R 1998 An exciting find for the architectural history of Basing House, *Hants Field Club Newsletter* n s 29: 8.
- Hughes, M 1989 'Hampshire Castles and the landscape 1066-1216', *Landscape Hist* 11, 27-60.
- Hurst, D G 1970 'Post-Medieval Britain in 1969', *Post-Med Arch* 4, 180
- Jennings, S 1981 *Eighteen centuries of pottery from Norwich*, The Norwich Survey and Norfolk Museums Service.
- Keast, J (ed) 1984 *The Travels of Peter Mundy 1597-1667*, Redruth.
- Kenyon, J R 1991 *Medieval Fortifications*, Leicester Univ Press.
- King, D J C 1983 *Castellarium Anglicanum: an index and bibliography of the castles in England, Wales and the Islands* New York.
- Knapp, G E C 1954 'The Medieval Paving Tiles of the Alton Area of NE Hampshire', *Proc Hants Field Club* 18:289-314.
- Miles, D 1997, Tree Ring Dates from Martin Bridge, *Vernacular Architecture* 28, 135
- Miller, G K 1964 'Report on Excavations at Basing House' pamphlet, source unknown - printed in Basingstoke.
- Millett, M 1983 'Excavations at Cowdery's Down, Basingstoke, Hants, 1978-81', *Arch J* 140:151-279.
- Millett, M & Schadla-Hall, T 1991 Rescue Excavations on A Bronze Age and Romano-British Site at Daneshill, Basingstoke, 1980-81, *Proc Hants Field Club* 47, 83-105.
- Moorhouse, S 1970 'Finds from Basing House, Hampshire c1540-1645: Part 1', *Post-Med Arch* 4, 31-91.
- Moorhouse, S 1971 'Finds from Basing House, Hampshire c1540-1645: Part 2', *Post-Med Arch* 5, 35-76.
- Morris, C 1982 *The Illustrated Journeys of Celia Fiennes*, London, 52, 75 1691/1696.
- Munby, J ed 1982 *Domesday Book 4, Hampshire*, Chichester
- Oliver, M and Applin, B 1979 'Excavations of an Iron Age and Romano-British Settlement at Ructstalls Hill, Basingstoke, 1972-5', *Proc Hants Field Club* 35, 41-92.
- Oppe, T A 1915 *Basing in the Civil Wars*, Basingstoke.
- Orde-Powlett, P C 1966 *Archaeological Review for 1966, CBA Group XII Wessex and Group XIII South West* 1, 36.
- Pearce, J E, Vince, A G and Jenner, M A 1985 *A Dated Type-Series of London Medieval Pottery Part 2, London-Type Ware*, London and Middlesex Archaeol Soc Special Paper No 6.
- Pearce, J and Vince, A 1988 *A Dated Type-Series of London Medieval Pottery Part 4, Surrey Whitewares*, London and Middlesex Archaeol Soc.
- Peers, C R 1909 'On the Excavation of the Site of Basing House, Hampshire', *Archaeologia* LXI pt 2, 553-64.
- Pevsner, N & Lloyd, D 1967 *Hampshire and the Isle of Wight*, Buildings of England 32, London.
- Pike, H H & R C Combley 1964 'Excavations near Basing House, 1962-3', *Proc Hants Field Club* 23 pt 1, 11-20.

- Platt, C and Coleman-Smith, R 1975 *Excavations in Medieval Southampton 1953-1969*, Leicester.
- Pococke, R 1754 *Travels through England...*, II, 159.
- Poulton, R 1988 *Archaeological Investigations on the Site of Chertsey Abbey*, Research Volume of the Surrey Archaeological Society No 11.
- Prosser, G F 1842 *The Antiquities of Hampshire Illustrated in the Ruins of Ancient Buildings*
- Renn, D 1973 *Norman Castles in Britain* 2nd ed, 102.
- Savage, A 1982 *The Anglo-Saxon Chronicles*, London.
- Sawyer, P H 1968 *Anglo Saxon Charters: An Annotated List and Bibliography*, Royal Hist Soc Nos 505, 1418, 1515.
- Smith, R A 1907-8 Notes, *Proc Soc Antiq London* 22, 63-86.
- Stearns, J 1984 *The Archaeology of Medieval England and Wales*, London.
- Tait, H 1979 *The Golden Age of Venetian Glass*, BMP.
- VCH 1911 *The Victoria History of Hampshire and the Isle of Wight*, Vol IV.
- Vine, P A L 1968 *London's Lost Route to Basingstoke*, Newton Abbot.
- Warren, W T 1907 *Story of the Great Siege of Basing House*, Basingstoke.
- Webster, L E & Cherry, J 1979 'Medieval Britain in 1978', *Med Arch* 23, 263??.
- Williams-Freeman, J P 1915 *An Introduction to Field Archaeology as illustrated by Hampshire*, London.
- Williams-Freeman, J P 1918 'Note: Field Archaeology Section 1917', *Proc Hants Field Club* 8, Part 2:251, 253.
- Williams-Freeman, J P 1953 A Topography of Alfred's Wars in Wessex, *Proc Hants Field Club* 18, Part 2:103-118.
- Wilson, D M & Hurst, D G 1964 'Medieval Britain in 1962 and 1963', *Med Arch* 8, 253.
- Wilson, D M & Hurst, D G 1966 'Medieval Britain in 1965', *Med Arch* 10, 190
- Winbolt, S E & Winbolt, V E 1941-3 'The Winchester-Silchester Roman Road Habitation sites', *Proc Hants Field Club* 15:239-244.
- Winbolt, S E 1941-3 'Roman sites on the Harroway in the Basingstoke area', *Proc Hants Field Club* 15:245-247.
- Wymer, J J 1977 *Gazeteer of Mesolithic Sites in England and Wales*, CBA Res Rep 20.

Newspaper Reports - and non attributed journal articles

- Trans Newbury & District Field Club 1875-86* 1889 III, 125.
- 'The Romance of Basing House', by Dr R Bowdler Sharpe, 18.8.1906
- 'Loyalty House - The Dungeon in the Midst', ...?World, 13.1.1910
- Proc Hants Field Club* VII pt 2 1915, xxx-xxxi.
- 'To Probe one of those Cromwell Ruins', *Southern Evening Echo*, 3.3.1962
- 'Plan to dig for 1645 Gold' *The Times*, 30.5.1963
- 'Police keep watch on £3m "dig"', *Southern Evening Echo*, 9.8.1963
- 'They seek a calf of gold', *Daily Herald*, 12.8.1963
- 'Dig for gold must wait', *Daily Telegraph*, 19.8.1963
- 'A hunt for £3,000,000's worth of gold', *Illustrated London News*, 24.8.1963
- 'Diving for gold with Davy Jones', *The Sun*, 8.4.1965
- 'Army divers search well for lost gold', *Southern Evening Echo*, 8.4.1965
- 'Ancient well keeps its secrets', *Basingstoke Review*, ?.4?.1965
- 'Digging for GOLD' *Daily Telegraph*, 24.8.1966
- 'Tunnels found below Basing House well', *Southern Evening Echo*, 23.5.1967
- 'House "dig" yields Elizabethan coins', *Southern Evening Echo*, 27.8.1968
- 'A Smoke, started 330 years ago', *Sunday Telegraph*, 8.9.1968
- Willis Museum local history files, Willis Museum, Basingstoke.

Basing House Archaeological Archives

Hampshire County Council Museums Service - Chilcomb House, Bar End, Winchester, S023 8RD

Accession Numbers

HCMS 1972.400	Pottery and other finds from excavations in the late 1960s	(Moorhouse)
HCMS 1972.632-664	Finds published by Moorhouse in <i>Post Med Arch</i>	(Moorhouse)
A1979.10B	Material from the Citadel Gateway (1978-81)	(Schadla-Hall)
A1982.8B	Material from the Walled Garden terrace	(Wiggins)
A1983.13	Material from the Citadel Gate (1982-83)	(Barton)
A1987.21	Walled Garden	(Allen)
A1988.41	Citadel Bank	(Allen)

A1990.24
A1991.31

New House -
Postern Gate

(Allen)
(Allen)

Interim reports

- Allen, D 1987 'Basing House Excavations 1987, An Interim Report', Hampshire County Museums Service.
 Allen, D 1988 'Excavations on the site of Basing House 1988', HCMS.
 Allen, D 1989 'The Phasing of Basing', *Hants Field Club Newsletters* n s 12: 22-23.
 Allen, D 1990 'Basing House Excavations July/August 1990 - An Interim Report', HCMS.
 Allen, D 1991 'Basing House Project Summer 1991', HCMS.
 Barton, K J 1983 'Basing House, Excavation of the Gatehouse Complex, Fifth Season', in *Archaeology in Hampshire 1982*, Hampshire County Council
 Barton, K J and Allen, D 1984 'Basing House', in *Archaeology in Hampshire 1983*, HCC.
 Schadla-Hall, R T 1980 'Basing House', in *Archaeology in Hampshire 1979*, HCC, 26.
 Schadla-Hall, R T 1981 'Basing House', in *Archaeology in Hampshire 1980*, HCC, 21-24.
 Schadla-Hall, R T 1981 News from Hampshire - HCMS, in *CBA Group 12 Newsletters* Sept 1981, 10.
 Schadla-Hall, R T 1982 'Basing House', in *Archaeology in Hampshire 1981*, HCC, 22-23.

Index

There is no entry for 'Basing House', as it forms the main subject of this report.

- Aethelnoth, Saxon priest 3
 Aethelred, Saxon ruler 3
 Aldermaston Archaeological Society 27, 29
 Alfred, Saxon ruler 3
 Anglo-Saxon Chronicles 3
 animal bones 3, 19, 29, 30, 45, 47, 54, 59, 87, 90,
 91, 105, 107, 111
 animal burials 105, 111
 Archer, Elias; Parliamentarian 6
 archives 29, 31, 61, 89
 Ashley, Hants. 20, 113
Aymez Loyalte, motto 6
- Bailey 11, 19, 20, 23, 29, 58, 110
 Ballieul, Henry de, treasure hunter 8
 Bank, *see* Citadel
 Banqueting House 22
 barbican tower 54, 56
 barrows 1
 Barton, K J 31
 Bartons Mill 1, 17
 Basa, personal name 3
 Basing Byfleet, manor 4
 Basinghall Street, London 3
 Basing Park 3, 6, 24
 Basingstoke 1, 4, 6, 14, 17
 Basingstoke & Deane Borough Council 14
 Basingstoke Canal 1, 11, 23, 25, 30, 103, 109, Figs
 17, 18
 Basingstoke Common 1, 24
 Basingstoke Museum 19, 25, 27
 Belgic 3, 29
 Blacklands Farm 3
 Bolton, Dukes of 8, 9, 15, 17, 25
 Bolton, Lord 20-23, 25-27, 30, 58-60, 66
 Bothy 22, 23, 27
 bowling green 9, 11, 20, 114
 Bronze Age 1, 27, 35, 86
 bridge 20, 22, 23, 24
 human burials 1, 3, 23-5, 29
 skulls 23, 29, 97, Fig 76
 Bury, Humphrey, treasure hunter 8
 Byfleet, Thomas 4
- Caedwal, Saxon ruler 3
 ceramic building material 3, 30, 71, 86, 106, Figs
 49, 50
- chapel 4, 27
 Chineham 3
 church 1, 3, 4, 6, 7, 15
 Citadel (Old House) 4, 9, 11, 20, 22, 23, 25-27,
 29, 30, 31, 61, 89, 93, 97, 113, Figs 7, 9, 19-
 21
 Bank 9, 11, 20, 59, 89, 90, 93, 97, Figs 67-70
 Ditch 1, 3, 6, 9, 11, 19, 20, 23, 26, 27, 29, 30,
 31, 52, 60, Figs 41, 42
 Gatehouse 6, 20, 26, 31, 54, 56, 61, Figs 21-44
 Postern Gate 20, 23, 26, 30, 95, 97, 99, 113,
 Figs 71-78
 Ringwork terminals 31, 48, 59, 61, Figs 37-40
 Civil War 5, 9, 15, 21, 23, 25-27, 29-31, 35, 45,
 57
 clay pipes 29, 30, 41, 45, 46, 48, 50, 51, 78, 104,
 106, 107, Figs 56-8, 81
 coins and tokens 3, 25, 27, 29, 30, 48, 85, 105,
 107, 111
 Cole, Richard, treasure hunter 8
 Common Plantation 3
 copper alloy *see* metalwork
 Cowderys Down 1, 3, 6, 25
 Cowdray House, Midhurst 57
 'cricket boundary wall' 21, 58, 59, 89
 Cromwell, Thomas 5
 Cromwell, Oliver 7
- Dalbier, Parliamentarian 6
 Daneshill 1, 3
 Danes 3
 Deddington Castle, Oxon 56
 de Port, Henry 4, 113
 de Port, Hugh 1, 4, 113
 de Port, John 4, 113
 Dickens Lane 3
 Ditch, *see* Citadel
 Domesday 1, 4
 dove-cotes 21, 103, 104, 114
 drawings on plaster 26
 Dunstall, John 8, 20, 57, 58, 113, Fig 5
- Eadred, Saxon ruler 3
 Edmund, Saxon ruler 3
 Edward I 4
 Edward IV 27
 Edward VI 5

- Elizabeth I 5, 109, 111
 enclosure 1, 3, 4, 24
 Englefield House 9
 Evans family, tenants 29
- Fiennes, Celia 9, 58, 113
 fishponds 1, 4, 13, 14, 17
 Five Ways Junction 19, 27, 29
 flint 29, 35, 45, 48, 86
 flint-lined pit 35, 38, 40, 48, 50, 54, 56, 71, 81,
 Figs 24, 27, 44
 Fuller, Dr Thomas 5, 8
- Garrison Gate 8, 11, 17, 18, 109, Figs 14, 15
 gatetower 54, 56
 glass 19, 26, 27, 30, 41, 42, 45-8, 51, 58, 76, 86,
 105, 106, Figs 53-5, 81
 Grange 4, 6, 8, 9, 15, 17, 25, Fig 9
 Great Barn 13, 15, Figs 11, 12
- Hackwood Park 1, 4, 9
 Hampshire County Council 11, 13, 15, 20, 109
 Hampton Court Palace 57
 Henry VIII 5
 Hollar, Wenceslaus 6, 8, 20, 57, Fig 4
 Huish Farm 1, 3
 human remains 1, 3, 23-5, 29, 97, 97, 99,
 Fig 76
- Iron Age 1, 3, 29, 35, 95
 iron (see metalwork)
- Jones, Inigo 23
- Kings Horse Croft 3
 Kitchen Area 20, 35, 54, 87, 89, Figs 64, 65
- Launceston Castle, Cornwall 54
 Layer Marney, Essex 57
 lead (see metalwork)
 Little Basing 1
 Loddon, River 1, 3, 4, 113
 Longleat 102
 Love Loyalty, motto 8
 Lovell, Humfrey 102
 Ludgershall Castle, Wilts 20
 Lychpit 1, 3
- Mary, Queen 5
 Maynard, Allen; French mason 102
Mercurius Aulicus 6, 85
 Merton Castle, Hants 20, 113
 metalwork
 copper alloy 54, 81, 82, 83, 85, 107,
 Figs 59-62
 iron 7, 19, 26, 56, 61, 81, 83 107, Figs 59,
 61
 lead 7, 19, 40, 42, 45, 46, 48, 51, 56, 56, 58,
 81, 83, 85, 86, 104, 106, 110, Figs 60, 62
 Miller, Graham, excavations by 27, 29, 30
 Moorhouse, Stephen 30, Fig 20
 Moses Barton Legg 11
- Moss, George, excavations by 25, 26
 motte and bailey 3, 4, 113
- New House 4, 6, 7, 11, 21, 23, 25, 27, 29, 84, 97,
 109, 114, Figs 82, 83
 New Model Army 7
 newspaper reports, 11, 27
 Norman 4, 15, 23, 27, 29
 Norton, Col; Parliamentarian 6
- Old Basing 1, 14, 15, 17
 Old House, *see* Citadel
 Old Sarum 20
 Oliver's Battery 1, 3, 4, 6, 113
 Oliver's Dell 1, 6
 Orchard 6, 22, 23, 29, 104
 Orde-Powlett, Christopher 11, 27, 29, 30
 Oxford 6
- Park Hill Cottage 18, 109, Fig 18
 Paulet,
 family 8, 58, 114
 John 6, Fig 3
 motto 45, 76
 William 4, 5, 27, 29, 54, 74, 95, 113, 114,
 Fig 2
 Peers, Sir Charles 25, 30
 Penmaen Castle 54
 Peters, Hugh, Parliamentarian 7, 25, 29
 Philip of Spain 5
 Postern Gate, *see* Citadel
 pottery 61, 90, Figs 45-8, 66, 81
 Medieval 19, 29, 52, 54, 61, 90, 104, 110
 Post-medieval 25, 59, 61, 104
 Romano-British 3, 27, 29, 35, 54, 61, 95
 Saxon 3, 27, 35, 54, 61, 104
 Pyotts Hill 4
- rampier 23
 Reading Beds 1
 Red Clay with flints 1
 Restormel Castle, Cornwall 56
 ring ditches 1
 ringwork 4, 20, 21, 30, 54, 89, 90, 93, 95, 97
 Ringwork terminals, *see* Citadel
 Roman 3, 23, 29, 56, 61, 95, 113
 Roman Well 21
 Ructstalls Hill 3
 Rumney Castle, 54
- Sandys 5
 Saxon 3, 27, 35, 54, 61, 99, 104
 Schadla-Hall, R T, 31
 Selborne Priory 4
 shell 26, 29, 47, 50, 59, 87, 90, 106
 Sherborne Priory 4
 Slaughter Close 1
 Smithson, Robert 102
 Society of Antiquaries 25, 27
 Sopers Row cottages 17
 St John, John 4
 St John, Robert 4

- stone building material 7, 14, 31, 74, 91, 97, 99,
106, Figs 51, 52, 81
- Titchfield Abbey 57
- Turret Cottage 19,21, Fig 16
- Upper Mill Farm 1, 3
- Van Derblin, Dutch engineer 23
- vineyards 9, 58, 113
- Vyne, The 5
- Walled Garden 9, 11, 19, 21, 72, 102, 113,
Figs 79-81
- Waller, William; Parliamentarian 6, 59
- Wallop, Robert 8, 58
- Wellocks Hill 1
- West Ham, Saxon burial 3
- William the Conqueror 4
- Wiggins, Kerry; 31
- Willis, George 1
- Wilson, Mr; Lord Bolton's Agent 26
- Winchester
- Cathedral 5, 72
- Marquess of 5, 8, 15, 25, 27
- New Minster 3
- Windsor 5
- World War II 3, 20, 81

HAMPSHIRE FIELD CLUB & ARCHAEOLOGICAL SOCIETY
MONOGRAPH 10

The fate of Basing House in October 1645, during the English Civil War, is well known. What was once the 'greatest of any subjects house in England, yea larger than of the Kings Palaces' was sacked and looted by Oliver Cromwell, at the end of a three-year siege. It was thoroughly demolished soon afterwards. Today the area of the house, a grassy ruin extending to some 18 acres (7.3 ha), is looked after by Hampshire County Council as one of its heritage sites, together with other features of the estate such as the Great Barn.

Archaeological excavation has taken place at Basing since the late 19th century, and much of this work has been published in outline form. The areas investigated have in the main been back-filled. This report describes the excavations by Hampshire County Council Museums Service, between 1978 and 1991, together with brief summaries of the previous work, and of the surviving elements of this once substantial estate.



Front cover: Basing House, aerial view 1994.

Rear cover: Citadel gatehouse under excavation in 1982, viewed from the north.